

اللغة العربية وقواعد لها

# ARABIC

## LANGUAGE and GRAMMAR

تأليف  
by

الدكتور يوحاanan كابليواتسكي

روبن ماي / التدصي

RUBIN MASS / JERUSALEM

## PREFACE

This book is the first in a series of books which I am about to publish, for English students who wish to learn the Arabic language thoroughly and by an easy method.

This book is the result of many years of experience that I acquired in the instruction of Semitic languages generally and of the Arabic language particularly \*).

It is the result of the scientific books that I wrote in the Oriental Institute of the Vienna University and in the Semitic-Islamic Institute of the Berlin University \*\*) and of the Arabic school-books which I published for Hebrew students in Palestine \*\*\*).

The aim of this book and of those which will follow it is to guide the beginner from the alphabet to a full knowledge of the Arabic language without subjecting him to any undue difficulty and without burdening the grammatical rules with terms and explanations that often cause much difficulty to the layman in matters philological.

In the very first lesson of this book the beginner will start reading with all the vowels and will go on thus till page 56. It is only there that he will find the list of the Arabic alphabet in its proper order. By then he will have learned all the rules pertaining to correct Arabic reading.

In the pages 1-55 only the lessons 5, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 14, 15,

\*) 1922-1930 in Vienna, 1931-1933 in Berlin and from 1934 in Palestine.

\*\*) 1. Scientific Grammar of the Arabic Language, 1928

2. Translation of the Hammuri Laws (from the original), 1930

3. Scientific Grammar of the Syrian (Assyrian) Language, 1932

4. Translation of the manuscript of the Arabic Commentary on the Midrash of Maimonides (the Tractates Baba-Qama and Baba-Meṣia), 1923

5. A dictionary and notes to the philosophical book *Dalalat-l-Hakīma* of Maimonides, 1932-3

\*\*\*) 1. The Arabic Language and Grammar, part I, 1937  
(A new edition is under press)

2. " " " part II, 1938

3. The Arabic Script, 1938

4. The Arabic Verb and its Conjugations, 1938

5. Palestinian Colloquial Arabic, part I, 1939

6. Selected Pieces of the Arabic Press, 1938.

©  
All rights reserved

Copyright by Rubin Mass, Jerusalem

Printed in Israel

Hemed Press, Jerusalem

## Grammatical Contents

	page
The pronunciation of the Arabic vowels <b>a, i, u</b>	1
The short vowels (.....)	1
Sukūn (.....)	3
Tanwīn (.....)	4
The long vowels (ī, ī, ū)	10
Tashdīd (.....)	11
Accent	12
The Tanwīn (ī̄)	17
Hamza (‘)	19
The long vowel ā expressed by .....	27
The past	28
Tā-Marbuta (ô)	31
Madda (ī̄̄)	32
Hamzat-l-wasl (ī̄̄)	40
Imperfect (= present and future in the European sense)	48
Alif Maqṣura (ṣ)	52
The list of the alphabet	56
The definite article	57
The indefinite article	57
The cases	61
Feminine	75
Dual	78

17, 18, 19, 20 and 22 are to be translated from Arabic into English and vice versa; the other lessons in the above pages are only reading lessons and are not to be translated.

From the 57<sup>th</sup> page onward each grammatical lesson is followed by one, two or three reading lessons composed of texts which are to be translated from Arabic into English and vice versa. The subject matter of these exercises always accords with the preceding grammatical lesson and each of the above texts is followed by an Arabic-English Vocabulary, in which the new words of the text are given.

In these vocabularies I often inserted notes referring to the syntax of the Arabic language in order to explain the structure of the Arabic sentence.

At the end of this book an English-Arabic Vocabulary is appended which contains all the words found in the texts that are to be translated from English into Arabic.

Of the verb I have given in this book only the Past and Imperfect (= future and present in the European sense). These were but superficially explained in lessons 11, 17 and 19 in order to facilitate the use of the verb in the texts of this book also. The verb will be fully dealt with in the next book of this series, which is to be published in the very near future.

As a parting word may I draw the beginner's special attention to notes 3 — 5 on page 1 which refer to the correct pronunciation of the Arabic vowels **a, i, u**.

In order to help the student in the study of this book, a key is likewise appended to it.

At the end of this preface I wish to express my sincerest thanks to Mr. Mordecai Zlotnik M.A., at present Programme Assistant (Hebrew Talks) at the Palestine Broadcasting Service, who put at my disposition his wide knowledge of the English, Arabic and Hebrew languages in reading the proofs and in advising me as to the English presentation of the present book.

JERUSALEM,

J. KAPLIWATZKY

## First Lesson

بْ (b)	بَيْبَ (bbb)	(1)
بْ (b)	بَيْبَ (bbb)	(2)

The Tanwin-less nouns . . . . . 109

Possessive pronouns	.	.	.	.	.	.	115
							124

**بیسپ** (bubabi) **بیسب** (babibu) **(b)بیسب** (babibu) **بیسب** (b)

**بَيْبَ** (babubi) **بَيْبَ** (babubu) **بَيْبَ** (babubib) **بَيْبَ** (bibabu) **بَيْبَ** (bibabi) **بَيْبَ** (bibabub) **بَيْبَ** (bibabubu) **بَيْبَ** (bibabubib)

KEI

卷之三

(1) The letter **b** (.) is designated by a point under

(2) the letter **b** is written  only at the end of a word.

shortened thus ببس (bbb).

(3) The vowel **a** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **a** in the English words: farm father

(4) The vowel **i** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **i** in

(5) The vowel **u** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **oo** in English words: *pin, mī, bring*.

(6) In Arabic there are three short vowels and three long vowels in the English words: push, pull.

vowels. The short vowels are:

3. u      (bu. The sign  over the consonant.)

(7) (t)

تَشْبَهُ (tashbeha) وَتَشْبِهَ (tashbeha)

تہجیات

تَتْسِيْلُ (tatīlu) تَتْسِيْلٌ (tatāli)

卷之三

(habitu) (تَعْتَدُ) (تَعْتَدُ) (تَعْتَدُ) (تَعْتَدُ)

تست (tibati) تتس (tatibu) تتب (batiba)

卷之三

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

V

يَسْنَدُ - يَسْنَدُ - يَسْنَدُ - يَسْنَدُ -

卷之三

({\text{पृ}}) ६८

ش (sh) ش (shu) ش (shh) ش (thh)

مکالمہ علیہ الرسول

**بَيْتٌ** (bayt) **بَيْتٌ** (bayt) **بَيْتٍ** (bayt)

(m) The letter ﴿ت﴾ is designated by two points above it.

(8) The letter ك is pronounced in Arabic like th

English words : thank, think.

at the beginning of a word, or in the middle of it, it is sharpened thus ئِنْ (inaniv).

(10) Whenever a consonant is without any vowel, it receives the sign ° above it. For example: بَسْتٌ (bast), بَنَابٌ (banab).

This sign, which indicates the absence of any vowel, is called **In Achari Sumbha**

لَبْنَ (lábun) لَبْنَةٌ (lábunah) لَبْنَةٌ (lábunah) تَبْنَ (tibn)

تَبْنَ (tibn) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah)

تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah)

تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah)

تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah)

## Second Lesson

ل (l) لَكْلَ (lakl)

لَبْلَ (labl) لَبْلَ (labl) لَبْلَ (labl)

لَى (k) كُوكَلَ (kukla)

(11) At the end of the words, the three vowel-signs are sometimes written double, thus: . In these cases they

are pronounced as if the letter ن (n) was written after them. For example: (bintin) بِنْتٌ (bintun) بِنْتٌ (bintun).

The sign . is a shortened form of .

These double-vowel signs . . . are called in Arabic Tannin. See page 17 (#4).

لَبْنَ (lábun) لَبْنَةٌ (lábunah) لَبْنَةٌ (lábunah) تَبْنَ (tibn)

تَبْنَ (tibn) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah)

تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah) تَبْنَةٌ (tibnah)

كَتْبَ (kátaba) كَتْبَ (kátaba) كَتْبَ (kátaba)

كَلْكَلَ (káktukla) كَلْكَلَ (káktukla) كَلْكَلَ (káktukla)

كَلْبَ (kálb) كَلْبَ (kálb) كَلْبَ (kálb)

(12) A small diagonal stroke over the vowel indicates that this syllable is accented

كَلْبَكَ (kálbuká) تِبْنَلَكَ (tibnúka)

كَتَبَ لَكَ حَلْبَ كَتَبَنَ كَتَبَتَ

كَسْتَبَ - تَسْكُنَ - لَكَ - كَلْبَكَ - بِنْتَكَ -

كَمْبَ - كَتَبَنَ - يَبْنَ - كَنْتَ - كَتَبَتَ -

كَبَ - بِنْتَ - كَبَتَ - يَبْنَ - بَيْتَ -

رَرِرِرِ (raráru) رَرِرِرِ (raráru)

زَلْزَلَ (zalzala) فَرِرَتَ (zurtu) زَرِرَتَ (zurtu) فَرِرَتَ (zalzala)

نَازَلَ (nazala) تَنْزَلَ (tanzila) نَازَرَتَ (nazurna)

ذَرِرَتَ (zurrti) تَنْزَلَتَ (tanzilah) ذَرِرَتَ (zurrti)

رَكِبَ (rakib) تَرَكِبَ (tarakib) رَكِبَتَ (rakibtu)

بَكْرَ (bakur) كَبَرَ (kabura) كَبَرَتَ (taraktu)

تَرَاكَ (taraka) تَرَاكَتَ (tarakta) (káthura)

(13) The letter ر (r) is always pronounced in Arabic like ر in the English words: run, ring.

(14) The letter ر (r) cannot be joined to the following letter. For example: رَكِبَ (rakiba).

مَوْلَكَ نَهْرَكَ تَرَكَبَ بَكْرَ

كَثِرَتَ - تَرَكَبَ - تَسْكُنَ - رَكِبَنَ - كَتَبَنَ

كَلْبَ - يَبْنَ - تَرَكَ - تَيْرَمَى - نَيْرَلَى - تَيْرَكَنَ

تَنْزَلَ - تَرَكَتَ - يَبْنَ - يَبْنَ - بَيْتَ -

زَرِرِرِ (zazízu) زَرِرِرِ (zazízu)

فَرِرَتَ (zurtu) فَرِرَتَ (zurtu) فَرِرَتَ (zurtu)

نَازَلَ (nazala) تَنْزَلَ (tanzila) نَازَرَتَ (nazurna)

ذَرِرَتَ (zurrti) تَنْزَلَتَ (tanzilah) ذَرِرَتَ (zurrti)

رَكِبَ (rakib) تَرَكِبَ (tarakib) رَكِبَتَ (rakibtu)

بَكْرَ (bakur) كَبَرَ (kabura) كَبَرَتَ (taraktu)

تَرَاكَ (taraka) تَرَاكَتَ (tarakta) (káthura)

تَكَبَّرَ - ذَرَرَتَ - تَبْرِيَنَ - بَرَزَ - يَبْرَزَ - تَرَكَنَ

تَرَكَتَ - يُوكَ - كَرَتَ - كَبُرَنَ - تَكَبُّرَ - فَرَيَنَ

تَنْزَلَ - زَلَّاتَ - تَسْكُنَ

### Third Lesson

ي (ي) يبّي (iyiyya)

و (و) وو (wawiwu)

يركب (yarkabu) يكتبن (yaktubu)  
(vaklúbna) (yáktubu)

ورث (warath) ورك (wákala) سور (wákkal)

يكتب (yáktubu) يركب (yáktubu)  
(yarkálona) (yáktubu)

قوب (thawbun) قوبون (thawrun)

روي (rówiya) رويت (ráwiya) كوي (kówiya)

لو (law) سور (thawrin)

بيت (vánzilu) بيتل (báytin)

وشب (wáhaba) وزر (wázara)

ميرث يشب فوزل بيته (wábil)

ميرث لشور لشوب ورثن نزلن  
موريك كليبك ويبلك لو (wábil)

ميرث تكتبن نكتش وتب رويت  
ميرث تبركن يكتبن يبرلن رو يت  
ميرث ينست بنت بست بنت

م (m) ممم (mimamu)

مبكم (bíkum) ينكم (yímkum)  
منكم (mínkum) ينكم (yímkum)

رمييت (ramíyta) كتبتهم (katábtum)  
لام (lam) (ramíyta)

من مرلم (min) يملع (yámliku)  
(yámliku) (marártum)

(16) The letter و (w) is pronounced like the English w in the words: **want**, **wonder**

(17) The letter و (w) cannot be joined to the following letter, for example: **وَكَل** (wákala).

(18) The letter ي (y) is pronounced like y in the English words: **yes**, **yet**.

۱- مهندی و ده  
۲- هنری فردیت بیست فردیت پیکریت  
۳- هنریم فردیت بیست فردیت پیکریت

(٤٠) **بَابُ زَانِي** (zānī) زَانِي (zānī) زَانِي (zānī)

وَمَا زَرَ (zara) وَزُرْتِي (zurī) مَا (mā)

(iii) The long vowels (see above para 1 (ii)) are:

1. **s-ī** (i. e. the vowel - ī) followed by **s** (y). For example :

(ii) لی (6) بی

2. و  $\bar{u}$  (i.e. the vowel (u) followed by و (w)). For example

يَا زُورٌ (yazur); يَا كُونٌ (yakun); يَا رُونٌ (yarun).

3. | - a {i.e. the vowel} (a) followed by the letter | which is called

in Arabic **أَمْ**). For example **كَانَ** (kāna) **بَلْ** (bal).

(babun).

The long vowels are designated in the English transcription by a horizontal bar over the vowel.

line above them, for example كن (kən) and are pronounced as follows:

(20) The **Allif** (1) cannot be joined to the following letter. For  
i like ee in feet, u like oo in soon and a like a in rather.

example (بَابُونْ) بَابُونْ

This sign of double consonant (\*) is called in Arabic **Tashdeed** or **Shadda**.

## Fourth Lesson

لکون — پکوپون — تکروپی — کنایی

وَسَاسِيْعُ (sasisu)

رسام مهر سلام (rassānun) (márra) (sállama) (rábbi) (mínni) (bustānun)

(21) The sign " above a consonant indicates that the consonant is doubled. For example سَلَّمَ, pronounce, sôllama; شَكَّ.

**pronounce:** shákkuñ.  
**Note:** شَكْعُونَ is pronounced as though written شَكْعُونٌ.

二〇

pronounce : shákkuñ.

Note: سَلَامٌ is pronounced as though written سَلَامٌ : سَلَامٌ رَبِّ :

This sign of double consonant (‘<sup>۲</sup>) is called in Arabic *Tashdeed* or *Shadda*. = **ڙ**.

سبب (sabbabun) سست (sittun) رب (rabbun) سست (sittun) رب (rabbun)

شیشش (shishusha)

卷之三

شَرِيكٌ (sharikun)	شَرِيكٌ (shāmsun)
شَرِيبٌ (sharibita)	شَرِيبٌ (shāribita)

(22) The rules of the accentuation in Arabic are:

on the last one

2. The last syllable but one receives the accent, if the vowel of this syllable is a long one, or if its vowel is followed

by a letter with a **Sukun** (°) or with a **Tashdiid** (") over it.

For example بُسْتَانُونْ (bustanun) مَسْرُورْ (masrurun)

卷之三

**3** When the last syllable but one does not correspond to  
سبعين (Ketwūnah) **سبعين** (Ketwūnah)

C. WHICH, INC. MUST STIPULATE, OR, ONE GOES NOT CONCERNED WITH THE ABOVE-MENTIONED CONDITIONS, THE ACCENT FALLS ON THE

last but two, when this syllable does correspond to the above. For example [kádáblumá]: [kádáblumá]

(*panchaklīmā*): **کوک** (Kok) (*vassūrukum*)

**4.** In words of four or more syllables the accent is going back to the syllable which corresponds to the above, for example میسٹر یوسف علی





نَذْنَذْ (dhadhidhu) {25} (dh)

دُفْنَتْ (dúfinat) (múfradim)

دَنْسَ (yádhkuru) يَدْكَارَ (dhákara) دَنْسَ

卷之三

كَلْبٌ (dháñabun) كلب (kíádhbun) كلب (hadhídhun) كلب (lázib)

دھکارنا (dhakárnā) کرنے کی تذکرہ

دھاں تکنڈیب (takdhibun) تکنڈیونا (takdhikuna)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

مکالمہ نوریہ

وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ يَرْجُو  
الْجَنَّةَ وَمَنْ يَرْجُو

**ف (f) ففف (fifufa)**

 <b>مَاذ</b> (mā'ūn)	 <b>شَاه</b> (shā'a)	 <b>اب</b> (ábu)	 <b>اكل</b> (ákila)	 <b>ابوكى</b> (ába'ka)	 <b>ابل</b> (ábla)
 <b>مَاذ</b> (mā'ūn)	 <b>شَاه</b> (shā'a)	 <b>اب</b> (ábu)	 <b>اكل</b> (ákila)	 <b>ابوكى</b> (ába'ka)	 <b>ابل</b> (ábla)
 <b>مَاذ</b> (mā'ūn)	 <b>شَاه</b> (shā'a)	 <b>اب</b> (ábu)	 <b>اكل</b> (ákila)	 <b>ابوكى</b> (ába'ka)	 <b>ابل</b> (ábla)
 <b>مَاذ</b> (mā'ūn)	 <b>شَاه</b> (shā'a)	 <b>اب</b> (ábu)	 <b>اكل</b> (ákila)	 <b>ابوكى</b> (ába'ka)	 <b>ابل</b> (ábla)

الْفَتَّا (fata) مَلْفُوفٌ (malfun) مَلْفُونٌ (malfun)

**كَافِرٌ** (kāfirun)      **فَلَفْلٌ** (fūlfūlun)      **دَرَانَا** (dérana)

(f) فَرَدْتَ (farárt) فَرَدْتَ (fárdun) فَرَدْتَ (farárt)

(25) The letter **ڏ** (dh) is pronounced in Arabic like **th** in the English words: **this, these.**

سَائِلُ (sa'ilun) سُوَالٌ (sa'ilun) يَبْدَا (yabda')

(yá'kulu) يَأْكُلُ (yá'kulu) أَنْبَىْ (ánbi'a) (yá'bda'u)

فَرَأَيْتَ (fara'it) فَنِدَأْ (fandá') فَنِدَأْ (fandá') بَنَاءً (bina')

أَسْمَارٍ (asmar) أَسْمَارٍ (asmar) - سَامِرٍ (samir)

سَائِلٍ (sa'il) أَرْسَىْ (arsa') أَرْسَىْ (arsa') - سَالٍ (sal)

يَ (y) and sometimes with (w) or without any

other letter. For example (akálta); (báda'a);

لَكْنٌ (lakn) بَيْتٌ (bayt) وَبَيْتَانٌ (baytan) وَلَهَا (la) كَرْمٌ (karim) كَرْمٌ (karim) بَرَأَنَا (bar'an)

وَأَنْتَ (wa'nt) وَهُوَ (wo) وَهُوَ (wo) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin)

وَإِنْتَ (wa'nt) كَبِيرٌ (kabir) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) لِي (li) فَيْلٌ (feil) كَبِيرٌ (kabir) وَسَمِينٌ

وَلَهُ (la) دَفْرٌ (davr) وَكِتابٌ (kitab) وَلَهُ (la) دَفْرٌ (davr) وَكِتابٌ (kitab)

وَكِتابٌ (kitab) فَيْلٌ (feil) وَتَوْزٌ (tawz) بَيْتٌ (bayt) وَبَسْتَانٌ (bastan)

1. اَبٌ وَامٌ وَلَهٗ بَابٌ وَبَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَبَابٌ كَبِيرٌ
2. بَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَبَابٌ كَبِيرٌ
3. لَهٗ بَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُمْ شَبَّاكٌ وَشَبَّاكٌ كَبِيرٌ
4. لَهٗ دَيْكٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ وَلَهُنْ دَيْكٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ
5. لَكْنٌ قَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ وَكَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ
6. لَكْنٌ بَيْتٌ وَبَيْتَانٌ وَلَهَا كَرْمٌ كَرْمٌ بَرَأَنَا
7. لَهٗ دَفْرٌ وَكِتابٌ وَلَهُ دَفْرٌ وَكِتابٌ
8. اَنْتَ وَهُوَ وَهُوَ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ
9. وَأَنْتَ وَهُوَ وَهُوَ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ
10. لِي فَيْلٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ
11. لَهَا دَفْرٌ وَكِتابٌ وَلَهُ دَفْرٌ وَكِتابٌ
12. فَيْلٌ وَتَوْزٌ بَيْتٌ وَبَسْتَانٌ

## Seventh Lesson

(read and translate)

### Vocabulary:

1. أَبٌ (ab) "father" 11. أَمٌ (am) "mother" 12. أَبٌ (ab) "father"
2. أَنْتَ (ant) هُنْيٌ (huni'a) سَلَلٌ (salal) سَلَلٌ (salal)
3. أَنْتَ (ant) دَيْكٌ (deik) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak)
4. فَيْلٌ (feil) هُوَ (hu) هُوَ (hu) هُوَ (hu) هُوَ (hu)
5. أَنْتَ (ant) دَفْرٌ (davr) دَفْرٌ (davr) دَفْرٌ (davr)
6. أَنْتَ (ant) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak)
7. أَنْتَ (ant) كَلْبٌ (kalib) كَلْبٌ (kalib) كَلْبٌ (kalib)
8. أَنْتَ (ant) كَبِيرٌ (kabir) كَبِيرٌ (kabir) كَبِيرٌ (kabir)
9. أَنْتَ (ant) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin)
10. أَنْتَ (ant) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin)
11. أَنْتَ (ant) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin)
12. أَنْتَ (ant) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin) وَسَمِينٌ (wasmin)
13. أَنْتَ (ant) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak)
14. دَيْكٌ (deik) دَيْكٌ (deik) دَيْكٌ (deik)
15. شَبَّاكٌ (shabak) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak) شَبَّاكٌ (shabak)
16. أَنْتَ (ant) أَنْتَ (ant) أَنْتَ (ant)
17. هُوَ (hu) هُوَ (hu) هُوَ (hu)
18. هُوَ (hu) هُوَ (hu) هُوَ (hu)
19. دَفْرٌ (davr) دَفْرٌ (davr) دَفْرٌ (davr)
20. أَنْتَ (ant) أَنْتَ (ant) أَنْتَ (ant)

**Translate:** 1. A big door and a big window 2. Thou hast a fat elephant and we have a big and a fat elephant as if there was a short pause after the first vowel.

Note: The letter **و** will be designated in the English transcription by the sign **و**.

3. I have a copy-book and a book and he has a book  
 4. She has a fat cock 5. We have a dog and you (fam.)  
 have a dog 6. A father and a mother 7. I and he.  
 He and thou (masc.) 8. He is fat 9. thou (masc.) art fat  
 and big 10. You (masc.) have a father and a mother and  
 we have a father and a mother.

## **Eighth Lesson**

(read and translate)

Eighth Lesson (read and translate)	
Plural	Singular
"our dog"	كَلْبٌ (kálbūn) "dog"
"Your(masc.)dog"	كَلْبٌ (kálbūkūnna) "your (masc.) dog"
"Your (fem.) dog"	كَلْبٌ (kálbūhūnna) "your (fem.) dog"
"their (masc.) dog"	كَلْبٌ (kálbūhūm) "their (masc.) dog"
"their (fem.) dog"	كَلْبٌ (kálbūhūn) "their (fem.) dog"
"his dog"	كَلْبٌ (kálbū) "my dog"
"her dog"	كَلْبٌ (kálbū) "his dog"

Ninth Lesson

(read and translate)



and also: **بَابٌ** "gate"; **دُورٌ** "door"; **كَرْمٌ** "vineyard"; **مِيَانَةٌ** "village"; **فَيلٌ** "elephant".

**Translate:** Thy (masc.) dog; our dog; his dog; their (masc.) dog; their (fem.) dog; her dog; my dog; thy (fem.) dog; their (fem.) dog; your (masc.) dog.

11. كَوْمَهَا أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ كَرْمِي. 12. تَوْرَهُ أَكْبَرٌ

وَاسْمَنْ مِنْ تَوْرِي. 13. تَوْرَكٌ وَكَلْبَكٌ فِي بَسْتَانِي

وَدَسٌ (qādasa) قَالَ (qāla) يَقُولُ (yaqūlu) (27)

أَنْ تَلْمِذَكْ - تَامِنِي فِي كَرْمِي. 15. بَيْتُهُ

أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ بَيْتِي. 16. أَنْ أَرْبَكَ - أَرْبَكَ فِي

كَرْمِي.

Vocabulary: 20. مِنْ أَرْبَكْ منْ "from"; "of".

22. أَكْبَرٌ أَكْبَرٌ "greater (bigger) than" كَبِيرٌ "great"; "big")

23. سَمِينٌ "fatter than" سَمِينٌ "fat") 24. سَلِيمٌ Salim "Shakir"(proper noun masculine)

سَلِيمٌ - قَلِيلٌ - قُولِي - قُمنَا - أَسْوَاقٌ - شَقِيقٌ

25. شَاكِرٌ شَاكِرٌ "Shakir"(proper noun masculine) شَاكِرٌ - قَنَابِلٌ - قَرَاءٌ - قَرَاءٌ - يَهْرَا - يَهْرَى - فَرِيقٌ

26. سَلِيمٌ سَلِيمٌ وَلَدٌ كَبِيرٌ "boy" "boy" ولَدٌ

(is) o big boy" "Shakir (is) a big boy".

28. أَنْ فِي "where" in".

Translate: 1. His dog is fatter than my dog.

2. Where is their (masc.) ox? — their ox is in my garden.

3. Her cock is fatter than my cock. 4. Thy (masc.) hare is in

my garden. 5. His boy is bigger than my boy. 6. Where

is my pupil and thy (masc.) pupil? — my pupil and thy (masc.)

pupil are in my vineyard. 7. I have an ox and she has

an ox. Her ox is bigger and fatter than my ox. 8. Where

is our dog? — Your (masc.) dog is in my house.

## Tenth Lesson

فَ قُوقَقٌ (qūqūq) (27) (q) قُوقَقٌ (qūqūq)

قَدْسٌ (qādasa) قَالَ (qāla) يَقُولُ (yaqūlu) (28)

يَقْدِسُ (yaqdādisu) قَبْلَ (daqiqun) قَبْلَ (qabila) قَبْلَ (qabila)

قَامٌ (qāma) قَامَ (qābla) قَامَ (qāma) يَقُومُ (qāmu)

رَفِيقٌ قَلْنَا قَاتَمَتْ حَقٌ شَقٌ

سُوقٌ قَلِيلٌ قُولِي - قُمنَا - أَسْوَاقٌ - شَقِيقٌ  
قَنَابِلٌ - قَرَاءٌ - قَرَاءٌ - يَهْرَا - يَهْرَى - فَرِيقٌ

جَبَجَبٌ (gibgaba) (28) جَبَجَبٌ (gibgaba)

جَسْمٌ جَمِيلٌ جَمِيلٌ (gámalun) رِجْلٌ (jálmun)  
جَمِيلٌ (gámalun) جَمِيلٌ (gámalun) (tárqama) تَرْجِمَةً (tárqama) تَرْجِمَةً (tárqama)

(27) The letter ق is a k sound produced in the throat. In the English transcription it will be designated by q.

(28) The letter ق (q) is pronounced like the l and like the g in the English words: joy and gentle.

In the English transcription it will be designated by g.

جَلِيد (gálidun) جَلْس (gádusá)

يَاجِرِيْ جَلْي بِهَانِبِيْ مَجْلِس

جَنُوبِيْ - جَرِيْ - نَجِيلِس - جَالِس - مَاجِ - هَاجِ

يَلْيَجِ - يَجِيلِي - يَجِيفِي - يَرْجَتِ - يَسْمَكِ -  
جَدِيْ - جَدَّيِي - جَلَسَنَا - جَلَسْتِم - جَرَّتِ.

حَجَّ (híhuhá) حَجَّ

هَاجِرِيْ (háhrun) حَكْم (hákimun) حَمْ (hámun) حَمْ (hámun)

رَحْم (rahímun) رَحْم (márgun) سَلَح (sálhahá)

حَلِيبِيْ (halibun) وَاحِدِيْ (wáhidun)

حَمَلَتِيْ حَمَارِيْ سَلَحِيْ رَاحِمِيْ

حَارِسِيْ - حَذِمِيْ - لَحِمِيْ - وَاحِدِيْ - يَحِرْسُونِيْ  
مَرْحُومِيْ - يَعْتِيْ - حَرَكَاتِيْ - مَلِيْ - حَرْبِيْ - يَنْجَاحِيْ  
يَعْمَلِيْ - حَدَّتِيْ - حَوَادِتِيْ.

خ (kh)

خَرْجِيْ (kháraga) خَسْ (khákrugu) خَسْ (khábarun)  
خَمْبَرِيْ (dakhalta) خَلْتَ (khámsun)

خَمْسِيْ (khámsin) هَدَّا (hadhá) لَكِنْ (lakínna)

إِلَهِيْ (láhun) إِبْرَاهِيمِيْ (ibráhímu)

خَبْرِيْ (khámsin) دَخْلَنَا لَكِنْ (lakínna)

دَخْلَنَا - خَرْجَتِمِيْ - حَرِيقِيْ - خَبْزِيْ - خَبْزِيْ - ذِلْكِ

هَذِهِ - أَخْبَرِيْ - حَمَارِيْ - حَمَارِيْ - حَرْجَنَا - أَخْرَجِيْ

(30) The letter **خ** (kh) is the same as the **ch** in Scottish words, such as **loch**. But more from the throat.

(31) In some words the long vowel **â** (â) is expressed by a short vertical stroke over the consonant. For example: هَذِهِ (hadhá); ذَلِكِيْ (dhálíka) etc.

(27) The letter **ح** (h) is a consonant which usually gives much trouble to English students. It is a strong aspirated **h** produced with effort.

In the English transcription it will be designated by **h**.

## Eleventh Lesson

A

Plural	Singular
"we"	أَنْ
"you (masc.)"	أَنْتَ
"you (fem.)"	أَنْتِ
"they (masc.)"	هُوَ
"they (fem.)"	هُيَّ

Translate: We and thou (masc.); you (masc.) and they (masc.); he and she; they (fem.) and you (fem.); thou (fem.) and I; we and she; I and he.

B

Plural	Singular
"we have written"	كَتَبْنَا
or "we wrote"	كَتَبْنَا
"you (m.) have written"	كَتَبْتُمْ
or "you wrote"	كَتَبْتُمْ
"you (f.) have written"	كَتَبْتُمْ
or "you wrote"	كَتَبْتُمْ
"he has written"	كَتَبَ
or "he wrote"	كَتَبَ
"she has written"	كَتَبَتْ
or "she wrote"	كَتَبَتْ

(32) An ا is written but **not pronounced** after the ending

of some verbal forms e.g. كَتَبْوَا , pronounce: katabū.

Translate: We have written; they (masc.) have written;  
thou (fem.) hast written; I wrote; You (fem.) wrote; Thou (fem.) wrotest; I have written; you (masc.) wrote; thou (masc.) wrotest

Conjugate as above the following four verbs:

تَرَكْتُ "I have left" or "I left"

كَسَرْتُ "I have broken" or "I broke"

أَكَلْتُ "I have eaten" or "I ate"

فَسَمِّتُ "I have divided" or "I divided"

## Twelfth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. ما هَذَا ؟ — هَذَا جَارِي 3. هَذَا

كَلْبِكَ 4. جَارِي أَكْلَ وَجَارِكَ مَا أَكْلَ وَأَنَا

أَكْلَتُ وَأَنْتَ مَا أَكْلَتَ 5. مَنْ كَتَبَ وَمَنْ

رَسَمَ — سَلِيمٌ كَتَبَ وَأَنَا رَسَمْتُ وَلِي أَنْ وَاخْتَدَ

وَلَهُ أَنْ وَاخْتَدَ 6. شَاكِرٌ أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ أَخْيَ وَلِي

جَلَّ وَلَكَ جَلَّ . بَجْلَكَ أَكْبَرٌ وَاسْمَنْ مِنْ جَمِيلٌ

10 مَنْ خَرَجَ مِنْ بُشْرَى — أَخْيَ خَرَجَ مِنْ هَنَالَكَ

11. دَمْنَ أَكَلَ فِي بُسْتَانِيْ? — أَبِي أَكَلَ هُنَاكَ 12. أَخِي  
كَتَبَ هُنَا وَأَخِي كَتَبَتْ هُنَاكَ 13. جَبَلِي أَكَلَ

هُنَا وَجَمَالِي أَكَلَ هُنَاكَ 14. هُمْ كَتَبُوا وَمَا رَسَمُوا  
بِسْتَانِيْ وَأَنْدَمْ خَرَجُوهُ مِنْ

15. هُنَّ رَسَمَنَ وَمَا كَتَبَنَ 16. نَعْنَ خَرَجَنا مِنْ

بِسْتَانِيْ وَأَنْدَمْ خَرَجُوهُ مِنْ هُنَاكَ 17. هُمْ رَسَمُوا

وَأَنْبَسَ مَا رَسَمَنَ 18. نَعْنَ وَأَنْسَمْ هُمْ وَأَبْنَنَ.

عَنَا وَهُنَّ أَنْتَ وَهُوَ. هِيَ وَأَنْتَ 19. كَتَبَنَا

وَمَا رَسَمَنَا. رَسَمْتُمْ وَمَا كَتَبْتُمْ. كَتَبُوا وَمَا رَسَمُوا.

### Vocabulary:

جَارٌ 30. هَذَا "this" 31. هَذَا "this" 32. هَذَا "this"  
"هَذَا حَمَارٌ" "this is an ass"

33. كَتَبَ 34. مَنْ "who?" 35. مَنْ "mol" 36. مَنْ "who?"  
"هَذَا كَتَبَ" "this is my ass"

"to write" 37. رَسَمْ 38. بَعْرَةٌ "brother".  
هُنَاكَ 39. "to go out" 40. جَبَلٌ "sister".  
"here" 43. هَذَا "here" 44-50 مَنْ "man" etc. See above p. 23 ..

**Note 1:** The Arabic verb usually has three radical letters  
as رَسَمَ . أَكَلَ . كَتَبَ .

**Note 2:** In dictionaries the Arabic verb is found in its 1

3rd pers. sing. masc. active form. This form is generally given in the dictionaries as the infinitive of the verb. Thus we say:

أَكَلَ "to eat"; كَتَبَ "to write", although it really means "he ate"; "he wrote"

### Translate:

1. I ate (have eaten) and thou (em.) didst not eat 2. They (masc.) wrote (have written) and we drew (have drawn)
3. My father went out of my garden 4. My mother went out of my vineyard 5. We wrote and he did not write 6. My pupil has a brother and a sister and thou (em.) hast a brother 7. Thy (masc.) camel ate (has eaten) and my ass did not eat 8. What is this? — this is a camel 9. Your (masc.) dog is bigger and fatter than my dog 10. We ate (have eaten) in my garden 11. He ate (has eaten) and she did not eat 12. My sister wrote (has written) and You (em.) did not write 13. Your (masc.) brother went out of my vineyard 14. We ate and she did not eat.

## Thirteenth Lesson

(33) (f) ٨

مَدِينَةٌ (madīnatun) سَنَدَةٌ (sānatun) مَدِينَةٌ (madīnatun)

كَبِيرٌ (kabīratun) سَيَارَةٌ (sāyāratun) لَهُوٌ (lāhu) لَهُوٌ (sánatun)

(33) The letter **ه** with two points above it (ه) is pronounced like ت (t). For example سَنَدَةٌ (sānatun).

The letter **ه** (ه) is found only at the end of the words (nouns or adjectives).

The letter **ه** is called in Arabic **Tā Mārbuta** and the letter

ت is called **Tā Ṭawīla**.

بَقْرَةٌ (báqaratun) بَقْرَةٌ (báqaratín) أَنْ (an)

(titatu) لَبَّ (35) (t)

آمَالُ (āmalūn) آمَالٌ (āmal) آهَلٌ (āħal) آهَلُ (āħalūn) آهَلَ (āħal) آهَلَ (āħal) آهَلَ (āħal)

أَخْذَ (أَخْذَهُوا) أَخْذَ (أَخْذَهُوا)

تینیں میں کوئی نہیں  
کوئی نہیں میں تینیں

كَيْدَةٌ — سَنَةٌ — بِسْتَانٌ — سَيَارَةٌ — كَيْدَةٌ

بِهِ مَنْ — هُوَ — أَمْ — إِنْ — بِهِ

(34) Whenever  $\tilde{e}$  is written above an **allif** and is followed by |

(thus: ||) or by a vowelless **Alef** (thus: ||), then the Hamza

while above it is put the sign called **Madda**, which is pronounced 'ā' e.g. أَكْلُ (aklū) instead of أَكْلٌ (aklūn) (qur'ānun) instead of قُرْآنٌ (qur'ān) فَرَأَنْ (fara'an) instead of فَرَأِنْ (fara'in).

Note: The لـ is in words like سوال (su'lūn) and يمتدّ (yimtad').

(yabtadi'ani) is not changed into because the ē in

both cases is not above **All** ((1)).

مَحْرُورٌ نَظَرٌ نَظِيفٌ (názifun) (názara) (mátarun) (mátar)

**طَبِيب** (jabīb) **مَدِينَة** (madīnatān) **مَا**

(35) The letter **卜** is an emphatic **t** sound produced by the tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth.  
The letter **卜** will be designated in the English transcription by **t̪**.

(38) The Tawlin  $\approx$  over the letter  $\circ$  is not followed by an

**All** (see above page 17 (24)). For example سَانَاتٍ (sáñatan).

The letter **J** will be designated in the English transcript by **x**.

## Fourteenth Lesson

(read and translate)

خَيْمَةٌ

لَفَظُ (nazárnu) نَظَرٌ (yánzuru) نَظَرٌ (zánántu) يَنظِلُ

نَظَرًا (yuzíllu) نَظَرًا (nažárná) لَفَظُ (káfaza)

ظَنٌّ نَظَرٌ ظَلٌّ مَظْفُوظٌ

ظَهَرٌ مَظْهُورٌ لَفَظُ مَطْلُوبٌ طَارٌ

رَبْطٌ هُرْبُوطٌ جَرِيدَةٌ أَخْذٌ

قُرَآنٌ أَنْبَاءٌ تَنْبِعَاتٌ رَبْيَهٌ رَبَّهُ رَبِّهُ

مَوْحِبَةٌ رَحْمَةٌ حَكْمٌ مَدِينَةٌ

طَلْبُونٌ قَرَاً - مَبْسُوطٌ - تَرْكَةٌ - طَرْقَةٌ

طَرْقٌ - نَظَارٌ - جَهْنَمٌ - جَهْنَمَةٌ - آكِيلٌ وَرَبَّاتٌ - آكِيلَةٌ - يَهْرَانٌ - حَرَكَةٌ - حَرَكَةٌ

ظَاهِرٌ - ظَاهِرٌ - لَفَظَاتٌ - يَظْنُ - ظَنَنَتٌ - شَدِيدٌ  
هَذَا - لَكِنٌ - فِكْرَةٌ - كَلْبَأ - حَمَاراً  
أَرْبَأً - مَدِينَةٌ .

خَيْمَةٌ

(kháymatuhu) "his tent" (kháymatuk) "h̄y (fem.) tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuh) "his tent" (kháymatuk) "her tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuh) "his tent" (kháymatuk) "her tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuhu) "his tent" (kháymatuk) "your (masc.) tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuk) "your (masc.) tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuhum) "heir (masc.) tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuhúnna) "their (fem.) tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuh) "his tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuh) "her tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuh) "their (fem.) tent"

(kháymatuhum) "heir (masc.) tent" خَيْمَةٌ (kháymatuhúnna) "their (fem.) tent"

Plural	Singular
"our tent"	خَيْمَاتٌ
"Your (masc.) tent"	خَيْمَاتٌ
"Your (fem.) tent"	خَيْمَاتٌ
"their (masc.) tent"	خَيْمَاتٌ
"their (fem.) tent"	خَيْمَاتٌ

**Note:** Nouns ending in ة (tā Marbuta) change the ة into ة (tā Tawīl), when the Possessive Pronouns are attached to them. For example "tent"; "my tent"; "h̄y (masc.) tent" etc.

**Translate:** "our tent"; "thy (masc.) tent"; "his tent"; "your (fem.) tent"; "their (masc.) tent"; "thy (fem.) tent"; "my tent"; "their tent"; "Your (masc.) tent"; "their (fem.) tent".

Declinate the following two nouns :

גנום

(read and translate)

گری بعید و کریمک قریب مین هنرا ۲. بینه

لهمْ كتبْ - أنتِ قرأتْ وانا كتبْتْ هـ ما قرأتْ

جتنی؟ — اخْتِیَّ فِرَاتْ فِي كَنْدِیْ وَكَلْبِیْ أَسْوَدْ

جـ 8 . دفتری تهیی و دفترک خصیف

وَهُنَّ مُؤْمِنُونَ ۖ وَلَا يَرْجِعُونَ

**Declinate the following two nouns**

Vocabulary: 51. **بعد** "farther than" **من** "than".

52. قریب "near" (See above page 30 Notes 1,2). 53. قرئ "to read" (أَقْرَبُ مِنْ "nearer than") 54. سُوْدَاءُ "black" 55. حُمْرَاءُ "red"

56. "بُلُوْن" (blue) 57. حِبْس "ink" 58. "تَهْمِيل" (heavy)

"heavier than")	59. حَمِيعٌ	"light (in weight)"	60. بَرِيدٌ
"newspaper"	61. جَارٌ	"neighbour".	

Note: مِن "from"; اَوْ "or"; اَنْ "than".

مِنْ كِتَابٍ

Translate: 1. Thy (masc.) sister wrote and I read  
2. Where is thy (fem.) neighbour? — he is in my vineyard

3. Her ink is black and his ink is blue      4. Their (fem.) garden  
is nearer than my vineyard      5. Thy (masc.) cock is heavier  
than my cock      6. What did he read? — he read my  
newspaper      7. Your house is nearer than my house  
8. I read and you (masc.) wrote      9. I wrote and my neighbour  
read      10. We read and they (masc.) did not read      11. She  
wrote and her sister did not write      12. She ate and he  
did not eat      13. His house is bigger than my house      14. His  
copy-book is heavier than my copy-book      15. Where is  
your (masc.) dog? — my dog is in my garden.

## Fifteenth Lesson

Conjugate the following two verbs:

- "I drank"      "I entered"  
 دَخَلْتُ      دَخَلْتَ  
 "thou (masc.) drankeſt"      "thou (masc.) enteredſt"  
 دَخَلْتَ      دَخَلْتُ  
 "thou (fem.) drankeſt"      "thou (fem.) enteredſt"  
 دَخَلْتُ      دَخَلْتَ  
 "he drank"      "he entered"  
 شَرَبَ      دَخَلَ  
 etc.      etc.

- and also:  
 رَكِبَ  
 "to ride" (See above page 30 notes 1-2);  
 فَسَّمَ  
 understand";  
 فَتَحَّ

(read and translate)

1. مَنْ شَرَبَ وَمَنْ أَكَلَ؟ — أَخْيَ شَرَبَ وَأَكَلَ  
 أَكَلَتْ 2. هُمْ أَكَلُوا وَمَا شَرَبُوا وَهُنْ شَرَبُونَ  
 وَمَا أَكَلَنَ 3. أَرْدِي شَرَبَ وَأَرْبَلَتْ مَا شَرَبَ

أَرْبَلَهُ أَسْمَنْ مِنْ أَرْبَيِ وَأَنْجِي دَخَلَ كَرْمِي  
 وَجَارِكَ حَرَاجَ مِنْهُ 6. لِي خَرْوَفُ سَمِينُ وَلَهَا  
 خَرْوَفُ سَمِينُ 7. خَرْوَفُهُ كَبِيرٌ وَجَرْوَفِي أَكْبَرٌ  
 8. أَنْتَ أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ أَخْيَ وَأَنَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْكَ  
 مِنْهُ 8. أَنْتَ أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ أَخْي وَأَنَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْكَ  
 وَلَمْ يَمْلِمْهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 10. مِنْ حَرَاجَ  
 مِنْ بَسْنَانِي؟ — جَدِيدِي حَرَاجَ مِنْهُ 11. جَدِيدِي دَخَلَتْ  
 بَسْنَانِي وَحَرَاجَتْ مِنْهُ 12. أَيْنَ جَدِيدِي وَجَدَتِكَ?  
 — جَدِيدِي وَجَدِيدِي في كَرْمِي 13. أَيْنَ وَجَدَتِي في  
 بَسْنَانِي وَأَيْمِي وَجَدَتِي في كَرْمِي.

## Vocabulary:

62. شَرَبَ "to drink" (See above page 30  
 notes 1-2);

63. دَخَلَ "to enter" 64. شَرَبَ "lamb" 65. دَخَلَ "grand-father" 66. شَرَبَ "grand-mother".

Translate: 1. Thy (masc.) grand-father has written and  
 my father has read      2. Your (masc.) lamb is fatter than  
 my lamb      3. Where is our mother? — Your (fem.) mother is  
 in my vineyard      4. Thy (fem.) pupil is big and my pupil  
 is bigger than he      5. His grand-mother entered my  
 garden      6. My camel drank and her camel did not drink  
 7. They (masc.) drank and we did not drink      8. He went out  
 of my house      9. My house is nearer than his house      10. My  
 sister drank and his sister did not drink      11. Her elephant is  
 bigger than my elephant.

## Sixteenth Lesson

**الْكَرْمُ الْكَبِيرُ** (alkármu-l-kábiru) من (min)

صَامَ صَاحِبٌ (sáma) (sáhib) (38)

(sáydu) صَاحِبٌ صَاحِبٌ (sáhib) (sáhib) (38)

يَصُومُ يَصُومُ (yasúmu) (yasúmu) (38)

صَدِيقٌ صَدِيقٌ (sádiqin) (sádiqin) (38)

أَكْتَبَ قَالَ أَكْتَبَ (qála-k-tub) (qála-k-tub) (38)

فِي الْبَيْتِ فِي الْبَيْتِ (fi'l-báyt) (fi'l-báyt) (38)

الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ (fi'l-báyt) (fi'l-báyt) (38)

(39) The letter ص is an emphatic **s** sound produced by the tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth,

The letter ص will be designated in the English transcription by **s**.  
(39) The Arabic word never begins with a vowelless letter; therefore in cases in which the word should begin with a vowelless letter, a **Hamza** with **Alif** are attached to the beginning of it.

For example: كَتَبْ | "write!" ("instead of كَتَبْ "write!", instead of كَتَبْ "ride!").

This **Hamza** with its vowel are pronounced only when the word is at the beginning of a sentence. But in the middle of it the **Hamza** with its vowel are dropped and the sign called **Wasla** is put over the **Alif** in place of the **Hamza**. In this case the **Alif** is not pronounced and only serves to combine the following vowelless letter with the last vowel of the preceding word, and then the two words are read as if they were one. For example قَالَ أَكْتَبَ pronounce:

من الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ (mín al-báyt al-kábir) صَارَ (shára) (mín)

قالَ لَهُ أَكْتَبْ (qála láhu-r-káb) "he said: write!" ; pronounce: qála láhu-r-káb "he said to him: ride!".

The **Hamza** which is changed in the middle of a sentence in the above-mentioned way into **Wasla** is called in Arabic **Hamzat-l-wasl**.

**Note:** If the word preceding a **Wasla** ends with a vowelless consonant, then a vowel (generally i) is given to this final consonant. For example قالَ أَشَرَبْ (qála-l-i-sh-ráb) she said : drink! "she said".

In the preposition من "from" the final receives the vowel a before the **Wasla** of the Article (see below page 57). For example منِ الْبَسْطَانِ (mín-l-bástani) "from the garden".

In other cases it receives the usual i. For example منِ ابْنَائِكَ (mín-i-b-níka) "from thy (masc.) son".

In the Suffixes مِنْ كِمْ كِمْ the final م receives the vowel u before the **Wasla**. For example بِيَتِهِمْ الْجَدِيدِ (bi-yáti-hum-l-jadid) "their (masc.) new house." their بِيَتِهِمْ (bi-yáti-hum) "their (masc.) house"; بِيَتِكُمْ الْجَدِيدِ (bi-yáti-kum-l-jadid) "your (masc.) new house" your بِيَتِكُمْ (bi-yáti-kum) "your (masc.) house".

saw the house" "you (masc.) saw".

هُنَّا رَأَيْتُ الْكَلْبَ فِي الْبَسْنَا

رَصِيفٌ - صَاحِبٌ - أَصْحَابٌ - صَاحِبُ الْبَيْتِ  
بَيْتٌ - الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ - الْبَيْتُ الْقَدِيمُ - الْكَبِيرُ  
صَارَ - صَارَتْ - صَدِيقٌ - صَدِيقَةٌ - يَصُومُ الْوَلَدُ.

ض (ب) (٤٠)

لَا (لَا) (lā) لا (لَا) (lā) لا (لَا) (lā)  
الْاسْلَامُ (al'islāmu) إِلَّا (illā) إِلَاتْ (il'āt)  
(lī'ānna) لَامِي (lāmī) لَامِي (lāmī)

أَرْضٌ (árdun) أَصْرَبْ (árdun) مَصْرُوبٌ

أَضْرَبْ (dáhhka) ضَحْلَى (madru'bun)

مَرْيَضٌ (maridun) فَرِضٌ (ráddha) فَرِضٌ (ráddun)

فَرِودٌ (qurudun) قَرِودٌ (qurudun)  
شَرِبَتْ الْقَرْفَةَ - لِأَخْيِي الْكَبِيرِ - لِأَمِيِّي - الْأَخْيَرِ  
طَرِقَ - صَرَفَ - صَرَبَنَا - يَصْرِفُونَ - صَرَرَ - يَظْلِمُ  
أَطْلَمَ - طَلَبَنَا - يَطْلَبُونَ - رَبَطَنَا - سَطَطَ - يَحْرَكُ

يَضْرِبُ - قَبَضَ - أَصْرَرَ - مَضَبَتَ - مَدَ - يَضْرِبُ  
دَيَّاكَ - دَيَّوْلَكَ - صَنْحَلَكَ - يَضْحَلَكَ - مَرَضَ.

(ii) When the letter ل (l) is followed by the letter ض (p), it is written as لامي (lāmī).

(iii) The letter ض is an emphatic d sound produced by the tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth.

The letter ض will be designated in the English transcription by d.

## Seventeenth Lesson

"he has found (he found) me"	وَجَدْنِي
"he has found (he found) thee (masc.)"	وَجَدَكَ
"he has found (he found) thee (fem.)"	وَجَدَكِي
" " " " " him (or: it)	وَجَدَهُ
" " " " " her (or: it)	وَجَدَهَا
" " " " " us	وَجَدَنَا
" " " " " you (masc.)	وَجَدَكُمْ
" " " " " you (fem.)	وَجَدَكُنْ
" " " " " them (masc.)	وَجَدَهُنْ
" " " " " them (fem.)	وَجَدَهُنْ

When a personal pronoun is the direct object of a verb,

it is attached to the verb. For example:

"he found":

وَجَدَ  
"he found me"; "he found thee (masc.)",  
"he found her"; "he found you (masc.)";  
"he found them (masc.)".

example  
"he found me": وَجَدْنِي  
found": بَيْتٌ "my house" / بَيْتٌ "house".

### وَجَدَتْ وَجَدَتْ

"she found" : وَجَدَتْنِي

"she found thee (masc.)": وَجَدَتْكَ

"she found thee (fem.)": وَجَدَتْكِي

"she found him (or: it)": وَجَدَتْهُ

"she found us": وَجَدَتْنَا

"they (masc.) found": وَجَلُوا

"they (masc.) found me": وَجَدُوهُ "they (masc.) found  
him"; "they (masc.) found her": وَجَدُوهَا "they (masc.)  
found you (masc.)" etc.

The personal pronouns in the objective case are the same  
as the possessive pronouns (see above page 22 and page 44).  
Note 1: The pronominal suffix of the first person in the  
objective case is فِي, while the suffix of the  
possessive pronoun in the first person is يِ. For

وَجَدَتْنِي "she found me"; وَجَدَتْكَ "she found thee (masc.)";  
وَجَدَتْكِي "she found thee (fem.)"; وَجَدَتْهُ "she found him (or: it)";  
وَجَدَتْنَا "she found us". etc.

Note 2: The final **Alif (ا)** in the 3rd plur. masc. (see above  
page 28 (32)) is dropped before the suffixes. For  
example "they (masc.) found me" وَجَلُوا

"they found" "they(masc.) found him" etc.

### Note 3:

The final م (m) in the second person plural, masc. is dropped and in its place a و is put before the pronominal suffixes. For example "you" وَجَدْتُكُمْ "you (masc.) found me" وَجَدْتُكُمْ "you (masc.) found" وَجَدْتُهُمْ "you (masc.) found them".

## Eighteenth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ حَصَانِي؟ — هُوَ وَجَدَهُ فِي بَسْطَانِي 2. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ أَحْمَدَ قَرْنَيْ؟ — هُوَ وَجَدَهَا فِي كَرْمِي 3. مَنْ ضَرَبَ أَخْيِي؟ — جَارِكَ ضَرَبَهُ فِي قَرْنَيِ 4. مَنْ وَجَدَ كُنْدُمَ فِي بَسْتَانِي؟ — جَارِكَ وَجَدَهَا هَنْدَكَ 5. هُوَ مَنْ وَجَدَ كُنْدُمَ فِي قَرْنَيِ؟ — جَارِكَ ضَرَبَهُ 6. مَنْ وَجَدَ كُنْدُمَ فِي قَرْنَيِ؟ — جَارِكَ وَجَدَهَا هَنْدَكَ 7. كَسَرَ خُبْزَنِي 78. أَيْضُونْ 77. "green"; 78. "white".

Translate: 1. Who found my book? — my sister found it 2. Who has beaten my pupil? — Our neighbour has beaten him 3. Who broke my cup? — their(masc.) sister broke it 4. Your (item) ink is black and our ink is blue 5. Her ink is green and his ink is red 6. Ibrahim is bigger than my brother 7. Ahmad broke my cup 8. I have an ass and she has an ass. Her ass is fatter than my ass 9. His horse is big and thy (masc.) horse is bigger than it 10. Your (masc.) dog is black and their (item.) dog is white 11. Her brother has beaten my ox 12. Her brother has beaten my ox 13. Where did he find my cup? — he found it in my vineyard 14. We found her. She found him I found her. Thou (masc.) hast found me.

كَسَرَ فَنْجَانِي. أَخْتِي كَسَرَ بَنْهُ 12. أَخْتِي شَرَبَتْ حَلِيَّيِي وَأَخْيِي مَا شَرَبَةَ 13. مَنْ ضَرَبَ جَهَلِيَّ?

أَحْمَدَ ضَرَبَهُ 14. حَصَانِكُمْ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ حَصَانِي 15. لِي حِبْرٌ أَسْوَدُ وَلَهُ حِبْرٌ أَخْضَرُ 16. هَذَا كَلْبُ أَسْوَدٌ وَكَلْمَ كَلْبُ بِأَبْيَضٍ 17. لِي حِصَانٌ وَحَمَارٌ وَلَكُمْ نُورٌ وَجَاهَ 18. فِنْجَانِكَ أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ فِنْجَانِي.

### Vocabulary: 67 "to find" (see above page 30. Notes 1-2); 68 "Ibrahim" (proper noun masculine); 69 "Ibrahim" (proper noun feminine); 70 "Ahmad" (proper noun masculine); 71 "Ahmad" (proper noun feminine); 72 "cow"; 73 "bread"; 74. "milk"; 75 "milk"; 76 "cup"; 77 "green"; 78 "white".

## Nineteenth Lesson

"small write", or "I write"

"thou (masc.) wilt write", or "thou writest"

"thou (fem.) wilt write", or "thou writest"

"he will write", or "he writes"

"she will write", or "she writes"

"we shall write", or "we write"

"You (masc.) will write", or "You write"

"You (fem.) will write", or "You write"

"they (masc.) will write", or "they write"

"they (em.) will write", or "they write"

The Arabic verb has two main tenses which, however, are

are generally known as Perfect and Imperfect.

The **Perfect** denotes a finished action, most often referring to the **past**, and the **Imperfect** denotes an unfinished action,

Translate: He will write; we shall write; They {make}

**will write**; he wrote (See above page 28); I have written; he has written; I wrote; he writes; she will write; we write; she writes;

**we** have written; **they** (masc.) have written; **thou** (masc.) write;  
**write**; **You** (masc.) will write; **I** shall write; **they** (fem.) wrote; we  
write; **you** (fem.) have written; **she** wrote; **they** (fem.) will write;  
**I** write; **they** (masc.) write.

The vowel of the second radical letter (see above page 30) in the imperfect can be u, a or i. For example كَتَبْتُ, كَتَبْتَ, كَتَبْتُمْ.

(‘yáktubú) "he will write" or "he writes"; بْ يَسْرَ (Yáshrabú)

"he will drink" or "he drinks"; يَمْرِبُ (yāmribū) "he will beat" or "he beats".

**Conjugate as above the two following verbs:**

گلستان

مُبَشِّرٌ بِالْجَنَاحِيَّةِ

etc.

and also: از کب "I shall ride" or "I ride"; لهم "I shall

**descend**; "I shall go out" or "I go out".

Translate: he will drink; we beat; they (masc.) beat;

**drink;** you (masc.) will drink; she will drink; thou (fem.) will drink"; they (fem.) will beat; we shall drink; thou (masc.) will beat; you (fem.) drink; we beat; I shall drink.

## Twentieth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. مَنْ يَكْتُبُ وَمَنْ يَوْمِهِ — أَيْ كَتَبَ  
وَأَخْتَيَّ تَرْسِمٍ 2. هُمْ كَتَبُوا وَانْتُمْ مَا كَتَبْتُمْ 3. هُمْ  
يَكْتُبُونَ وَانْتُمْ لَا يَكْتُبُونَ 4. هُنْ شَرِيفُونَ وَانْتُمْ  
مَا شَرِيفُونَ 5. وَهُنْ يَشْرِيفُونَ وَانْتُمْ لَا تَشْرِيفُونَ  
6. بَقْرِي تَشْرِيفُ الْأَلَانَ وَبَقْرِي لَا تَشْرِيفُ وَانْتُمْ  
تَكْتُبُ فَاطِمَةُ 7. هِيَ تَكْتُبُ فِي دَفْرِي 8. صَالِحٌ  
كَتَبَ الْأَلَانَ وَانْتَا مَا كَتَبْتُ 9. أَيْنَ تَكْتُبَ  
بُورِي 10. شَارِكَهُ فِي بَسْتَانِي 11. مَنْ قَتَحَ كَتَابِي 12. تَلْبِيَّ قَتْحَهُ  
فِي مَدْرَسَيِّي 13. مَائِدَهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مَائِدَتِي 14. أَيْنَ أَخْبَرَ  
لِي مَائِدَهُ وَكَرْسِيٌّ وَلَكَ مَائِدَهُ وَبَنْكٌ  
15. مَائِدَهُ بَلَى أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مَائِدَتِي 16. أَخْتَيَ قَاطِمَةً أَكْبَرُ مِنِّي وَأَنَا  
هُوَ فِي مَدْرَسَتِي 17. أَخْتَي قَاطِمَةً أَكْبَرُ مِنِّي وَأَنَا  
أَكْبَرُ مِنْكِي 18. مَنْ قَتَحَ كَتابِي 19. هِيَ تَخْرِيجُ وَانْتَ لَا  
قَتَحَهُ تَلْبِيَّ شَارِكَهُ 20. أَنْتَ تَرْسِمُ وَهُوَ لَا يَرْسِمُ 21. إِنْ هُمْ  
يَكْتُبُ وَانْتُمْ لَا يَكْتُبُ 22. أَنْتَمْ حَرْبِيَّهُ مِنْ  
بَسْتَانِي وَهُمْ لَا يَخْرِجُونَ مِنْهُ.

### Vocabulary:

79. لَمْ "not" (particle of negation before the Imperfect)  
80. آنَ "now", "at present" (Note: pronounce: تَسْرِيفُ الْأَلَانَ)

81. صَالِحٌ "Fātīma" (proper noun, feminine) See above page 40 (39) and page 32 (34)  
82. مَدْرَسَةً "Sālih" (proper noun, male)  
83. مَدْرَسَةٌ "fātīma" (أَنْرِكُهُ "to leave" (Imperfect: 84. مَدْرَسَةٌ "school")  
85. قَاتِحٌ "to open" (Imperfect: 86. مَائِدَهُ "table"  
87. بَلَكٌ "chair" 88. كُرْسِيٌّ "bench".

### Translate:

1. Thy (male) brother wrote and we did not write  
2. We shall write and you (male) will not write 3. Thy (male) table is bigger than my table 4. I have a chair and a bench and she has a table and a chair 5. Where did Salim write? — he wrote in my vineyard 6. His ox is black and her ox is white 7. Your pupil broke my chair 8. Thy (female) horse is bigger and fatter than my horse 9. Where is her brother? — he is in my school 10. They (male) will write and he will not write 11. Our sister drank and thy sister did not drink 12. Where is his lamb? — his lamb is in my garden 13. I have written and my grand-father did not write 14. Your (female) house is nearer than my house 15. We have an ox and an ass and he has a camel and a cow 16. She has a sister and I have a sister and a brother.

## Twenty-first Lesson

(۴۲) (۱) میرزا

عَرَبٌ (‘árabun) مَعْ (má‘a) إِسْلَمٌ (‘isma‘)

معنی (má'i) سمعت (sámit) (yá'állim) يعلم (yá'álimu)

مَرْأَى (ārā) مَرْعَى (mārū) مَرْعِى (mārū)

بَنَى (bánā) بَكَى (bákā) مَدِي (mádī)

(22) The letter *c* is a very strong guttural produced by the compression of the throat and the expulsion of the breath.

The letter C will be designated in the English transcription by '.

(43) At the end of a word the **ə** is often expressed by **ي**

For example أَلْقَى (álaqá) "he threw"; بَنَى (báni) "he built".

As soon as this is receives a suffix, it becomes an 1

for example **στι** "he threw it"; **στι** "he built it"

is called in Arabic **Allī Maqṣūra** and also **Allī Bisurati-vā**.

مَعْلُومٌ — يَعْلَمُ — عَرَبِيٌّ — عَرَبِيَّةٌ — مَعْنَى — ضَمْنَةٌ

صَنْعَتْ - صِنَاعَةٌ - فَعَلَ - عَدَدٌ - عَدَ - مُسْتَهْلِكٌ

(11) (gh)

غَرْبِيٌّ (Ighári) مَغْرِبٌ (mágħribun) بَلْخٌ

**بَالَّغَةُ** (bálagha) شَغْلٌ (shúghlun) غَمٌ (ghánamun) (ghánamun)

**غَرِيبٌ** (gharibun) بـ**بلِيغٍ** (balighun) يـ**عُسْلِ** -

غَنِيٰ (ghanīyūn) غَنِيٰ (yāghsīlū)

عَيْنَةً - سِرْجِيُّو - يَسِيرَةً - عَيْنَةً - عَيْنَةً - عَيْنَةً - مَعْلُوبٌ - غَالِبٌ

(34) The letter č has a sound like the gargling pronunciation

between  $g$  and  $r$ .

The letter ē will be designated in the English transcription by gh.

مَعْلِمَكَ - عَلَى - عَلَيْكَ - عَلَيْنَا - مَعْلِمَكَ - عَلَى - عَلَيْهِ - مُعَذِّبٌ  
عَيْرَنَا - فَعَلَتْ - غَرَبَتْ - عَسَلتْ - يَدْعُونَا - دَعْوَتْهُ  
يَفْرِي - عَدْفُونِي - تَعْتَرُ - رَغَبتْ - غَنْمَلَكَ - غَنْمَكَمْ  
شَفَلْ - رَعَيْ - رَعَيْتَ - رَأَيْ - رَأَيْتَ - بَنَى - بَنَاهُ - رَآهُ

بَكَى - بَقَى - بَقَىَ.

## Twenty-second Lesson

(read and translate)

1. إِلَى أَيْنَ تَذَهَّبُ يَا أخْيَ ؟ — اذْهَبْ إِلَى  
مَدْرَسَتِي 2. أَيْنَ كَتَابَكَ ؟ — كَتَابِي عَلَى مَادِيَّتِي  
3. أَخْيَ خَرَجَتْ مِنْ عَزْفَتِي وَأَخْيَ مَا خَرَجَ مِنْ  
هَنَاكَ 4. أَخْيَ رَجَحَ مِنْ يَافَا وَأَيَّ رَجَحَ عَدَداً مِنْ  
هَنَاكَ 5. مَعْلِمِي ذَهَبَ مَعَ جَدِّي إِلَى مَدْرَسَتِي  
6. مِنْ خَرَجَ مَعَكَ مِنْ عَزْفَتِي وَ— مَعْلِمِي خَرَجَ  
مَعِي مِنْ هَنَاكَ وَلِيَ كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَكَ كَلْبٌ صَغِيرٌ  
كَلْبِكَ أَصْغَرٌ مِنْ كَلْبِي 8. أَخْيَ أَصْغَرٌ مِنِّي وَأَنَا  
أَصْغَرٌ مِنَّكَ 9. وَجَارِي قَقِيرٌ جَدًا وَجَارِكَ غَنِيٌّ جَدًا

## Vocabulary: 89

إِلَى "to go"; "to go away" 90. أَذْهَبَ 91. أَذْهَبْ إِلَى  
عَلَى (imperfect particle of address) 92. عَلَى "upon" 93. غُرْفَةٌ "room"; "chamber" 94. رَجَعَ 95. يَانَا (yesterday)  
وَرَبْلَمْ 96. غَدَاراً "to-morrow" 97. مَعْلِمٌ (teacher) 98. مَعَ "with me" "with thee (masc.)"  
مَعْلِمِي 99. صَفَرٌ مِنْ "smaller than" أَصْغَرٌ مِنْ "smaller than"  
غَيْرٌ 100. أَفْحَرٌ مِنْ "poorer than" أَفْحَرٌ مِنْ "poor", "needy", "poorier". 101. أَغْنَى مِنْ "rich", "richer than". 102. جَدًا "very".

## Translate:

- Where is my newspaper ? — Thy (masc.) newspaper is on my table
- His horse is smaller than my horse
- Her ox is very big
- Ibrahim is richer than my neighbour
- His neighbour is rich and our neighbour is poor
- Where is my book ? — thy book is in my room
- Your (masc.) garden is smaller than my garden. My garden is very big
- Thou (masc.) art bigger than my brother
- Where is my grand-father ? — he is in my room
- You (masc.) grand-father is richer than my grandfather.

The order of the Arabic alphabet is as follows:

The letters The letters	Names of the letters	Pronunciation of the letters	The letters	Names of the letters	Pronunciation of the letters
ا Alif	'Alif	See page 10 (19), page 19 (26), p. 32 (39), p. 40 (39)	ض ض	Dād	d. See page 42 (40)
ب Ba	Bā	b.	ط ط	Tā	t. See page 33 (35)
ت Tā	Tā	t.	ظ ظ	Zā	z. See page 33 (37)
ث Thā	Thā	th. See page 2 (8)	ع ع	'Ain	'Ain See page 52 (42)
ج Gim	Gim	ج. See page 25 (28)	غ غ	Ghain	gh. See p. 53 (44)
ه Hā	Hā	h. See page 26 (29)	ف ف	Fā	f.
خ Khā	Khā	kh. See p. 27 (30)	ق ق	Qāf	q. See page 25 (27)
د Dal	Dal	d.	ك ك	Kāf	k.
ذ Dhal	Dhal	dh. See p. 18 (25)	ل ل	Lām	l.
ر Rā	Rā	r. See page 6 (13)	م م	Mīm	m.
ز Zai	Zai	z.	ن ن	Nūn	n.
س Sin	Sin	s.	ه ه	Hā	h.
ص Sād	Sād	ش. See page 40 (39)	و و	Wāw	w. See page 8 (16)
ض ض	ضض	ي ي	ي ي	ي ي	ي. See page 9 (18)

## Twenty-third Lesson

"the dog"

الكلب (1)

"the big dog"

الكلب الكبير (2)

"a dog"

الكلب الكبير (3)

"a big dog"

الكلب الكبير

(1) The definite article "the" is expressed in Arabic by the syllable ال, which is prefixed to the nouns and the adjectives. For example **الكلب**, "the dog"; **الكلب الكبير**, "the big" "the great".

(2) The **Hamza** (see above page 19 (26)) of the article is **همزة الواء** (see above page 40 (39)). This **Hamza** is therefore pronounced only at the beginning of a sentence. But in the middle of the sentence it becomes a **Wāṣla** (see above page 40 (39)), which combines the vowelless ل of the article with the last vowel of the preceding word and the two words are read as if they were one (see above page 40 (39)). For example **البيت الكبير**, pronounce: al-báytu-l-kabíru "the big house" (البيت الكبير "the big"); **كل الكلب**, pronounce: ákala-l-kálbu "the dog ate".

(3) The indefinite article **a (an)** is expressed in Arabic by the **Tanwin** (see above page 4 (11)). For example **كل الكلب** "a dog"; **كل الكلب** "a dog".

كل الكلب

Note 1: When the noun is qualified by an adjective, the

adjective follows it, e. g. (بَارِعٌ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ) (bārūn bāytu kābirūn)

"a big house" and not: كَبِيرٌ بَيْتٌ (kābirūn bāytu).

If the noun is definite, the adjective also must be made definite by the addition of the article ال thus:

هذا الْجِمَارُ رَخِيصٌ وَذَلِكَ الْجِمَارُ أَرْخَصٌ مِنْهُ  
كَبِيرٌ الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ

The copula "is" or "are" is not expressed in Arabic e. g. أَنْجِيلَارُ فَتَيْمَرُ "the baker is poor".

Note 2: هذا الكلبُ كَبِيرٌ "this is a dog"; "this is a big dog"  
هذا الكلبُ كَبِيرٌ الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ "the house is big"; "the house is poor".

هذا الكلبُ كَبِيرٌ الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ "the dog is big"; "this big dog"

هذا الكلبُ كَبِيرٌ الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ "this dog is big"

## Twenty-fourth Lesson

هذا الجمل صغير. هو أصغر مني.

هذا الحمار رخيص و ذلك الحمار أرخص منه.

3. ذلك الخياط فقير. هو أفقير من جاريه. من

أيضاً كان هناك في الملاقي كان اليوم في يافا

والحادي والعشرين كان هناك اثناي عشر في بيته

وتفليطة أيضاً كانت هناك بأبي كاتب اليوم في يافا واثني إثناي عشر في الكتاب هناك 8 أيام

الحادي والعشرين في بيته في يافا وفي بيته

الحادي والعشرين في بيته في يافا وفي بيته

و، متى رجع زيد من يافا ومتى رجع الحلاق؟

Translate: A big elephant; the big elephant; this elephant; this big elephant; the elephant is big; this elephant is big; the hare is fat; the vineyard is large; the house is small; this house is small; the neighbour is poor; the book is big; a big book; this book is big; the big book; this camel is big and fat; a big ass; an ass is big and fat; the big horse; this horse is fat; this big horse; a fat cock; a big and fat lamb; this lamb is bigger than my lamb; this bread is cheap; this cup is cheap; the cup is cheap; this camel is fatter than this camel, this house is cheaper than my house.

## Twenty-fifth Lesson

رَجَمْتَ مِنْ يَكَانَ — رَجَمْتُ الْيَوْمَ مِنْ هَذَا؟  
 15. بَدَلَكَ سَكَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي كَرْبَلَى وَفِي بُسْتَانِي 16. أَيْنَ  
 الْكَلْبُ الْكَبِيرُ وَأَيْنَ الْجِمَارُ؟ — الْكَلْبُ  
 الْكَبِيرُ فِي بُسْتَانِي وَالْجِمَارُ أَيْضًا فِي بُسْتَانِي.

Vocabulary: "ذَلِكَ" 104. "that"  
 "رَخيصٌ" 103. "cheap"

سَكَانَ الْبَيْتُ 105. "tailor"  
 106. خَيَاطٌ "that house"  
 زَيْدٌ 108. "today"  
 "he was" 107. "she was" 109. "also" "too"  
 "أَيْضًا" 110. "baker" 111. "blacksmith"  
 أَنْتَ 112. "barber" 113. "new"

أَنْتَ 114. "أَيْضًا" 115. "أَخْيَرٌ" 116. "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا"  
 "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا" 117. "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا" 118. "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا"  
 "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا" 119. "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا" 120. "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا"  
 "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا" 121. "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا" 122. "أَخْيَرٌ أَيْضًا"

"a baker visited me"	زَارَنِي خَبَازٌ (1)
"the baker visited me"	زَارَنِي الْخَبَازَ
"the house of a baker"	بَيْتُ الْخَبَازِ
"the house of the baker"	بَيْتُ الْخَبَازِ
"he saw a baker"	هُوَ رَأَى خَبَازًا
"he saw the baker"	هُوَ رَأَى الْخَبَازَ
"from the baker"	مِنْ الْخَبَازِ (2)
"to the baker"	إِلَى الْخَبَازِ
"on the baker"	عَلَى الْخَبَازِ

- (1) In Arabic there are three cases: Nominative, Genitive and Accusative.

These three cases are expressed as follows :

2. This camel is big and that camel is small    3. This tailor is rich and that baker is poor    4. The barber was in Jaffa and the blacksmith too was there    5. This new house is bigger than my house    6. That new book is cheaper than my new book    7. When did you return from Jaffa? — I have returned to-day from there    8. Where is the tailor? — He is in my room    9. This dog is bigger and fatter than my dog    10. A big garden. The big garden. This big garden is big.

- That garden. That big garden. That garden is big.

b) The Genitive is expressed by the **Tanwin** = (in) if the noun is indefinite and by the vowel - (i) if it is definite. Thus:

من أَنْجِبَارَ بَيْتُ خَبَارٍ "the house of a baker"

عَلَى الْبَيْتِ بَيْتُ الْخَبَارِ "the house of the baker"

Note: The Genitive case causes the preceding noun to be definite as if the article [ال] were prefixed to it. For example:

"on the house"; "under the table"; "from the baker" (See above page 41, Note); "on the house of the baker"; "the house of a baker"; "the house of the baker" (and not, بَيْتُ الْخَبَارِ بَيْتُ الْبَيْتِ لِلْخَبَارِ instead of بَيْتُ الْبَيْتِ لِلْبَيْتِ لِلْخَبَارِ) because it is definite).

When the preceding noun is indefinite, the preposition لـ must be attached to the following Genitive e.g.

"a house of the baker". or: "a house of the houses of the baker".

c) The Accusative is expressed by the **Tanwin** = (an) if the noun is indefinite and by the vowel - (a) if it is definite.

Thus :

هُوَ وَجَدَ كِتَابًا "he found a book"

هُوَ وَجَدَ الْكِتَابَ "he found the book"

Note: هُوَ وَجَدَ جَرِيدَةً "he found a newspaper" (see

above page 33 (36)).

c) All prepositions are followed by the genitive e.g.

لِلْخَبَارِ: "to (or) a baker"; إلى أَنْجِبَارِ: "to the baker";

"from the baker" (See above page 41, Note);

"on the house"; "under the table"; "the door of the big house"

"to (or) the baker" (the | (Alt) of the article | fails out if it is preceded by the preposition لـ instead of لـ instead of لـ)

Note 1: بَيْتُ الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ is to be translated: "the door of the big house"

Note 2: If a noun in the possessive case (genitive) belongs to two nouns, it follows the first while the second comes after it (the genitive) with a possessive-pronoun suffix. For example: بَيْتُ الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ وَبَيْتَهُ "the house of the baker and his garden" ("the baker's house and garden").

كَرْمُ الْجَدَدَةِ وَبَيْتَهُ "the vineyard of the grand-mother and her house" ("the grand-mother's vineyard and house")

Translate: The door of the house; the dog or the neighbour; the horse is bigger than the ass; he ate bread and she drank milk; I ate the bread and he drank the milk; this new house is bigger than that house; the book is on the table; the dog is under the table; the neighbour is in the vineyard; your (masc.) house is smaller than this new house; thy (masc.) newspaper is on the table; thy (fem.) grand-father is in the garden.

## Twenty-sixth Lesson

1. مَنْ قَتَّ الْبَابَ الْكَبِيرَ? — أَنَا فَتَحْتُه  
 2. مَا أَكَلَتِ الْيَوْمَ? — أَكَلَتِ الْيَوْمَ بَخْرًا وَدَرْجًا  
 3. كَلْبُ الْجَارِ أَسْتَهِنُ مِنْ كَلْبِ الْجَارِ. هُوَ إِنْ  
 كِتَابٌ مُدِيرٌ الْمَدْرَسَةِ? — كِتَابٌ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي  
 غُرْفَةِ الْجَنْدِيِّ وَجَدَ الْجَلَارِ كَانَ الْيَوْمِ فِي كَرْمٍ أَخْيَ  
 4. جَارٌ الْمُنْتَاطِرِ فَقَبَضَهُ هُوَ أَفْقَرُ مِنْ جَارِ الْجَنْدِيِّ  
 5. مَنْ زَارَكَ الْيَوْمِ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ? — مُوَلِّمٌ مُحَمَّدٌ  
 6. زَارَفِي هُنَالِكَ 8 مَا أَنْهَى وَمَا أَسْمَى أَخْذَى? — إِسْتَهِي  
 إِسْمَاعِيلُ وَاسْمُهُ أَخْتِي فَاطِمَةُ وَأَخْشَاكَ زَارَتِ الْيَوْمَ  
 اِنْتَ الْمُمْلِمِ 10. إِنْ أَبْنَ الْجَنْدِيِّ? — إِبْنُهُ فِي بَيْتِ  
 الْجَنْبَارِ 11. إِنْ كَلْبُ الْأَنْجَالِ? — كَلْبُ الْأَنْجَالِ تَحْمَلُ  
 الْمَائِدَةَ 12. بَيْتُ الْأَنْجَالِ وَكَرْمُهَا 13. عَمِي زَارَ الْيَوْمَ  
 خَالِكَ فِي الْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ 14. عَمِي كَانَتِ الْيَوْمِ فِي  
 كَرْمٍ جَدِيدٍ 15. إِبْنُ الْمَعْلِمِ الْكَبِيرِ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ  
 فِي يَاتِي 16. مَنْ شَرَبَ الْجَلِيدَ? — أَنَا مَا شَرَبْتُهُ.

شَرَبَهُ أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمُ 17. تَحَالِي زَارَ حَالَ أَجْلَارِ فِي  
 يَاتِي 18. مَا أَسْمَ أَنْجَالِ? — إِسْمُ أَنْجَالِ إِسْكَاعِيلُ  
 19. إِسْمُ أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمُ وَأَسْمَ اِنْجِي هَنْدُ 20. هَذَا  
 الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي.

### Vocabulary:

115. حَلَمٌ meat "director"

116. إِسْمٌ "she visited" name

117. زَارَ "he visited" زَارَتْ (she visited) إِبْنٌ

118. إِسْمٌ "son" The Hamza in إِبْنٌ and in إِسْمٌ is Hamzat-l-wasi

119. إِبْنٌ "son" إِبْنٌ إِبْنٌ إِسْمٌ

120. إِسْمَاعِيلُ "Isma'il" (proper noun, masculine) 121. سَلَيْمَانٌ

Sulaymān" (proper noun, masculine) 122. حَالَ "uncle" (on the mother's side) 123. حَالَةٌ "aunt" (on the mother's side) 124. تَحْكَتْ "under" (prep.)

125. حَمَّةٌ "uncle" (on the father's side) 126. حَمَّةٌ "aunt" (on the father's side).

### Translate:

1. This dog is big. He is bigger than that (masc.) dog 2. I have an ass and he has a horse 3. The horse is bigger than the ass and the camel is bigger than the horse 4. Where is the director of the school? — He is in the room of the grand-father 5. What is thy (masc.) name? — my name is Soulymān 6. I ate bread and meat and she drank milk 7. This camel is bigger and fatter than that camel 8. The barber is poorer than the blacksmith 9. The teacher is in the director's room (in the room of the director) 10. The blacksmith is in the new house 11. This elephant is big. He is bigger than my elephant 12. Where is the tailor? — he is in the house of the baker 13. Where is the new book? — the new book is on the table.



أَجَابَ ١٣٨. "he answered" (سَأَلَ "to ask" (imperfect.

أَنْفِي) "أَنْ" "that" (and "and then" (see page 70 note 2) ١٤٠. فَـ "that" (أَنْ) "that thou (masc.)"; "أَنْ" "that he" etc. ١٤١. أَنْكَ "ا-

صَدِيقٌ" ١٤٢. "that thou (masc.)"; "أَنْ" "that he" etc. ١٤٣. مَرْكَبٌ "a friend" ١٤٢. "to ride" ; "to sail" ; "to navigate"

رَكِبَ مَرْكَبًا; رَكِبَ حَمَارًا ١٤٤. مَرْكَبٌ "a ship" (Note: "ship" ١٤٣. بَحْرٌ "a sea" and not: على حَمَارٍ ١٤٤. بَحْرٌ (في مَرْكَبٍ) على حَمَارٍ ١٤٥. مَاتَ "he died" ١٤٦. مَلاجٌ "sailor; mariner".

Translate: 1. Where is the brother of the director? —

2. I opened the door of the room he is in this garden. 3. Where is my friend? — thy (masc.) friend is in the room of the grand-father. 4. Their (masc.) father was to-day in the school

5. Her father rode an ass and her brother rode a horse. 6. My uncle (on the mother's side) visited the father of the teacher. 7. Who saw the brother of the tailor? — the brother of the blacksmith

saw the brother of the tailor. 8. The big lion is in a large cage 9. Has he written to-day? — yes, he has (written). 10. Did he open the door of the room? — yes, he opened.

## Twenty-eighth Lesson

### حَارِسُ الْأَسْدِ

كَانَ إِبْرِهِيمُ فِي حَدِيقَةِ الْحَيْوَانَاتِ وَرَأَى هَنَاءً أَنَّهَا فِي قَصْبَيْنِ. فَسَأَلَ إِبْرِهِيمَ حَارِسَ الْأَسْدِ: هَلْ أَنْتَ حَارِسُ هَذَا الْأَسْدِ الْكَبِيرِ؟

فَاجْبَاتُ الْحَارِسِ: بَعْدَ سَأَلَ

— وَمَنْ يَنْظِفُ الْقَفْصَ؟ — أَنَّكَ.

— أَلَا تَخَافُ مِنِ الْأَسْدِ؟ لَا.

— وَكَيْفَ ذَلِكَ؟ — وَقْتَماً اغْنَيْتَ هَذَا الْقَفْصَ بِكُوْنِ الْأَسْدِ فِي ذَلِكَ الْقَفْصِ وَوقْتَماً اغْنَيْتَ ذَلِكَ الْقَفْصَ بِكُوْنِ الْأَسْدِ فِي هَذَا الْقَفْصِ.

الْمُسْعَلَة: مَنْ كَانَ فِي حَدِيقَةِ الْحَيْوَانَاتِ؟ مَا رَأَى إِبْرِهِيمُ فِي حَدِيقَةِ الْحَيْوَانَاتِ؟ مَنْ يَنْظِفُ قَدْصَ الْأَسْدِ؟ لِمَذَا لَا يَخَافُ الْمُسَارِسُ؟

### الْحَمْلُ وَالْمَلَاحُ

سَأَلَ أَمْهَدُ مَلَاحًا: أَيْنَ مَاتَ أَبُوكَ؟ — فَاجْبَاتُ

الْمَلَاحُ: فِي مَرْكَبٍ كَانَ يَرْكِبُهُ فِي الْبَحْرِ. وَأَيْنَ مَاتَ جَدُوكَ؟ — هُوَ إِيْشَنَا مَاتَ فِي مَرْكَبٍ كَانَ يَرْكِبُهُ فِي الْبَحْرِ. وَأَيْنَ مَاتَ جَدُوكَ؟ — هُوَ إِيْشَنَا مَاتَ فِي مَرْكَبٍ

— وَلَا يَخَافُ أَنْ تَرْكَبَ مَرْكَبًا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ؟

وَقَالَ الْمَلَائِكَةُ أَيْنَ مَاتَ أَبُوكَهُ— عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ.

— وَجَاءَهُ— عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ.

أَسْعَلَهُ: مَا سَأَلَ أَجَدَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ? مَا أَجَابَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ?

وَأَنْتَ لَا تَخافُ أَنْ تَنَامَ عَلَى أَفْرَاشٍ يَمْدُدُ ذَلِكَهُ  
الْمَلَائِكَةُ: مَا سَأَلَ أَجَدَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ؟ مَا سَأَلَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ؟

أَسْعَلَهُ: مَا سَأَلَ أَجَدَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ؟ مَا سَأَلَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ؟

وَأَنْتَ لَا تَخافُ أَنْ تَنَامَ عَلَى أَفْرَاشٍ يَمْدُدُ ذَلِكَهُ  
الْمَلَائِكَةُ: مَا سَأَلَ أَجَدَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ؟ مَا سَأَلَ الْمَلَائِكَةَ؟

كَيْفَ كَيْفَ! 147. "watchman" حَارِسٌ "to clean" نَظَفَ 148. "to clean" نَظَفَ "I shall clean" or "I clean" 149. شَافَ "to fear" خَافَ 150. كَيْفَ كَيْفَ! "how?" "time" وَقْتٌ 151. كَيْفَ كَيْفَ! "time" وَقْتٌ 152. سُؤَالٌ "question" (plural. "while"; "during the time that") سُؤَالٌ 153. لِيَازَا (اسْمَاعِيلَةً) (and also: لِيَازَا 153 "why?"; "wherefore?".

154. نَامٌ "bed"; "mattress" 155. نَامٌ "to sleep" "I shall sleep" or: "I sleep".

**Note 1:** In a ship that he sailed, is to be translated:

**Note 2:** The difference between فَ and وَ that joins two words or independent sentences, while فَ indicates a development in the narrative e.g. أَكَلَ فَسَرَبَ بَيْتٌ "he ate and then he drank"; أَكَلَ وَسَرَبَ بَيْتٌ "he ate and drank".

In this sentence we do not know if he ate before and then drank, or the contrary. فَ is also used to join two sentences when there is a change of subject

## Twenty-nineth Lesson

الْكِتَابُ (alkitabu)

(alkitabu)

الْكِتَابُ الْكَبِيرُ (alkitabu-kabiru)

(alkitabu-kabiru)

الْدَّفْرُ (ad daßaru)

(ad daßaru)

الْدَّفْرُ الصَّغِيرُ (ad daßaru-s-saghiri)

(ad daßaru-s-saghiri)

If the article الْ is attached to a noun or adjective which begins with one of the letters ز ل ظ ط ض ص ش س ز ر ذ د ث ت م that of the article is not pronounced (although it is written) and each of the above letters that follows it, is doubled by **Tashdid**. For example: الْدَّفْرُ (ad daßaru) pronounces: addáßaru "the copy-book"; اَلْصَّعِيْرُ (as-saghiri) "the small"; اَلْفَيْرُ (alfayir) "the little"; اَلْمَقْبِرُ (al-maqbar) "the grave"; اَلْمَقْبِرُ الصَّغِيرُ (al-maqbar-s-saghiri) "the small copy-book".

In this case the ل of the article is written without **Sukún**.

1. هَذَا الدَّفْرُ رَبِّيْرٌ وَذَلِكَ الْمَقْبِرُ صَبِيْرٌ 2. هَذَا  
الْمَعْلُوبُ أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ يَسَلِيْيٌ وَمِنْ قَتَحَ الشَّبَاكَ
- أَنْعَيْرُ— أَنَا يَتَهُمُ أَلْسِنَاتِ الصَّبِيْرِ 4. إِلَيْ أَنْ

تَنْهَىٰ بِهِ يَا عَمِي ؟ — اذْهَبْ إِلَى الْكُرْكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ  
وَكَانَتْ أُخْتِي فِي الْمَسَارِقِ الْجَدِيدِ 6. دَاهَبَتْ إِلَى  
الْمَسَارِقِ فِي الصَّبَاحِ وَرَجَعَتْ مِنْ هُنَاكَ فِي الْمَسَارِقِ  
7. كَانَ أَبُو سَلَمٌ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ قَبْلَ الظَّاهَرِ 8. مَا  
شَرِبَتْ قَبْلَ الظَّاهَرِ وَمَا شَرِبَتْ بَعْدَ الظَّاهَرِ 9.

شَرِبَتْ قَبْلَ الظَّاهَرِ فِي جَانَ حَلِيبٌ وَبَعْدَ الظَّاهَرِ شَرِبَتْ  
فِي جَانَ قَهْوَةً 9. هَذَا اِلْتَمِيدُ اِكْبَرُ مِنْ تَسْمِينَ  
أُخْتِي 10. أَيْنَ الشَّوْرُ السَّمِينُ ؟— الشَّوْرُ السَّمِينُ فِي  
بَيْتَانِ الْبَنَجَارِ 11. رَأَى شَاكِرٌ عَصْفُورًا جَيْلاً عَلَى  
الشَّجَرَةِ 12. أَخْنَى شَرِبَ فِي جَانَ قَهْوَةَ وَعَمِي  
شَرِبَ حَلِيبًا 13. أَيْنَ عَصْفُورُ مُحَمَّدِ ؟— عَصْفُورُهُ

### Vocabulary:

كَلْنٌ 156. "fox" 157. "shop" 158. "market" 159. "morning" 160. "evening"  
ضَرْهٌ 161. "before" (prep.) 162. "after" (prep.) 163. "fore-noon" 164. "coffee" 165. "joiner"; "carpenter" 166. "tree".

158. مَسَارِقٌ "markets" 159. صَبَاحٌ "morning" 160. مَسَارِقٌ "evening"  
ضَرْهٌ 161. بَعْدَ "before" (prep.) 162. بَعْدَ "after" (prep.) 163. قَبْلَ "midday" (fore-noon)  
عَصْفُورٌ 164. "coffee" 165. "joiner"; "carpenter" 166. "tree".

Translate: 1. I drank a cup of coffee and my sister drank

milk. 2. My brother was in the new shop. 3. My grandfather was in the school and returned from there in the after-noon. 4. Her sister was in the market in the morning. 5. Where is the small bird? — it is on the tree in the garden. 6. I have a fox and he has a fox. 7. This fox is faster than that fox. 8. This ox is bigger than that ox. 9. Where is your (masc.) pupil? — he is in the room of the grand-father. 10. Where is the house of the tailor? — the house of the tailor is in the market. 11. Where is the carpenter? — the carpenter is in the garden of the baker. 12. This carpenter is poorer than that carpenter. 13. This bird is bigger than that bird. 14. My brother was in the school in the morning and my sister was there in the after-noon.

### Thirtieth Lesson

#### أَمْتَالٌ

- في قَصْصٍ صَغِيرٍ 14. لِي تَعْلَمَ وَأَرَنَّ وَلَكَ  
كَلْبٌ وَخَرْوَفٌ 15. أَيْنَ عَصْفُورُ الصَّغِيرُ 16.  
عَدُوٌّ عَاقِلٌ حَيْرٌ مِنْ صَدِيقٍ جَاهِلٍ 17.  
أَمْهُونُ الصَّغِيرُ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ 18. أَيْنَ الْكُرْكَانِ  
الْجَدِيدِ 19. عَصْفُورٌ في الْبَرِّ وَلَا عَشَرَةٌ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ  
الْجَدِيدِ 20. الْكُرْكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ تَحْتَ الشَّجَرَةِ.

## اللَّهُوْرُسُ وَ تِلْمِيذَةُ الرَّسَامِ

قَالَ الْمُعْلِمُ لِسَلِيمٍ: أَرْسِمْ يَا سَلِيمْ عَلَى الْمَوْرِجِ.

حَمَارًا وَرَكِبَهُ وَلَدٌ. فَرَسِمَ سَلِيمُ عَلَى الْمَوْرِجِ حَمَارًا

وَمَا رَسَمَ الْوَلَدَ.

الْمُعْلِمُ: وَأَيْنَ الْوَلَدُ؟ سَلِيمُ: إِنَّمَا يَأْمُلُ مَعْلِمِي.

أَسْعَدِيَّةُ: مَا قَالَ الْمُعْلِمُ لِسَلِيمِ؟ مَا رَسَمَ سَلِيمُ؟  
مَا سَأَلَ الْمُعْلِمُ سَلِيمًا؟ مَا أَجَابَ سَلِيمُ؟

Vocabulary: 169. (امتَّالُ وَ مَكْتَلُ) (plural: "example"; "خَيْرٌ مِنْ") "good"; 170. "alive"; 171. "dead"; 172. "enemy", "foe"; 173. "enemy", "better than"; 174. "intelligent"; 175. "ignorant", "foolish"; 176. "hand"; 177. "ten"; 178. "security", "safety"; 179. "man", "person"; 180. "keeping", "حفظ"; 181. "language", "tongue"; 182. "draughtsman", "رسَامٌ"; 183. imperative of "رسم", "to draw"; 184. "blackboard", "لوْحٌ"; 185. "to descend", "نزَلَ".

## Thirty-first Lesson

"a big brother"

"a big sister"

"a new book"

"a new newspaper"

"a clean hand"

أَخْ كَبِيرٌ      أَخْتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ  
جُنْدِيَّةٌ جُنْدِيَّةٌ  
يَدٌ نَظِيفَةٌ

In Arabic there are two genders: masculine and feminine.

Normally the male is masculine and the female is feminine

e. g. أَبٌ "father", أُمٌّ "mother".

But in Arabic the genders in grammar must not be connected with the sexes: things without life, and without sex are still treated as masculine or feminine.

The nouns which denote inanimate things are feminine:

1) when they end in ة. For example: جَرِيدَةً "a newspaper";

سَفِينَةً "a ship".

2) when they are names of lands and cities. For example: مصر "Egypt", "Cairo"; أَكَا "Jaffa".

3) when they denote the parts of the body which are in pairs.

For example: يَدٌ "hand"; رِجْلٌ "foot"; عَيْنٌ "eye" etc.

Note: The following nouns are feminine without a special ending:

أَرْضٌ "earth", وَارِثٌ "well", حَرْبٌ "war", وَيْنٌ "wine",

أَرْتَسٌ "arts"; رِيحٌ "wind"; رِيحٌ "sun".

If the noun is feminine, the descriptive adjective which follows it must be feminine also, the feminine being usually formed by adding the ending ة to the masculine. For example:

1. (كتاب نظيف) "a clean room" 2. غُرفة نظيفة  
الْكَبِيرَةُ 3. أين أخي الصغير؟ هو في النافذة  
(بيت صغير) "a small ship" سفينة صغيرة

1. مَرْتَ طَلَمَ أخْوَلَ الْجَبَلَ وَمَرَّ تَلَ مَنْهُ  
أَخْيَ طَلَمَ الْجَبَلَ قَبْلَ الظَّاهِرِ وَمَا أَكَلَ أَخْوَلَ

— أَخْيَ طَلَمَ الْجَبَلَ

أَنَا رَقِيمًا 10. وَبَدَ أَخْيَ جَوْزَةَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ فَرَقَمَا  
11. سَلَمٌ رِيحٌ هَذِهِ الْجَوْرَةُ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ 12. أَنِينَ  
جَرِيدَةُ أَخْيِي؟ — أَخْدَهَا إِلَيْهِمْ وَوَصَمَهَا عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ  
الْكَبِيرَةُ 13. أَنِينَ أَخْيَ الصَّغِيرُ؟ — هُوَ فِي النَّافِذَةِ

14. أَخْوَلَ يَلْعَبُ مَعَ أَخْيِي فِي النَّافِذَةِ 15. لَعِبَ

أَجْهَدَ مَعَ أَخْيِي فِي النَّافِذَةِ.

### Vocabulary:

186. طَلَمَ "to mount", "to rise", "to go up"  
وَنَا أَكَلَتْ أَخْتَكَ وَ— أَخْيَ أَكَلَ جَبَرَانَا وَقِطْمَةَ  
جَبَرَانٌ 187. جَبَلٌ "mountain", "mount". قِطْمَةٌ 188. جَبَلٌ "mountain", "mount".  
جَبَنٌ 189. قِطْمَةٌ "a piece" 190. هِرَةٌ "cheese" 191. هِرَةٌ "cat" 192. قِرْدٌ "ape";  
هِرَةٌ حَارَيَ? — يَهِي فِي الْفَرِيقَةِ الصَّغِيرَةِ هِرَةٌ بِحَدِيدِي هِرَةٌ  
هِرَةٌ حَارَيَ? — يَلْلَكَ تِلْلَكَ أَكَبَرٌ مِنْ أَطْهَرَةٍ 5. هَذِهِ الْأَنْدَ  
وَقْرَدٌ. الْقِرْدُ أَكَبَرٌ مِنْ أَطْهَرَةٍ 5. هَذِهِ الْأَنْدَ  
وَقْرَدٌ. الْقِرْدُ أَكَبَرٌ مِنْ أَطْهَرَةٍ 5. هَذِهِ الْأَنْدَ  
تِلْلَكَ الْبَقَرَةُ، cow", this "هَذِهِ الْبَقَرَةُ"  
"monkey" 193. هَذِهِ "this (fem.)"  
هَذِهِ "that (fem.)"  
هَذِهِ "that cow"
194. تِلْلَكَ "that cow"
195. قِطْمَةٌ "clean" نَظِيفٌ 196. دِرْتَى "dirty" وَسِنَتٌ  
رِجْلٌ "foot" 197. وَسِنَتٌ 198. أَغْرِفُ "to know" (Imperf.) أَخْدَ  
(أَغْرِفُ أَرْضَ "to take" 199. عَرِفَ "to know" (Imperf.) أَخْدَ  
وَتِلْلَكَ أَرْجَلٌ وَسِنَتٌ 7. مَنْ أَخْدَ جَرِيدَةَ الْمَعَلِمِ?  
لَا أَعْرِفُ مَنْ أَخْدَهَا 8. هَلْ تَعْرِفُ هَذَا سَلَمِ؟ — لَا.  
لَا أَعْرِفُ وَمَنْ رَفِعَ هَذِهِ أَجْرِيَدَهِ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ?
200. لِفْتُ "lift up" (Arabic Imperf.) رَفَعَ 201. أَرْضٌ "earth", "land"  
202. جَوْرَةٌ "nut" 203. وَصْعَدَ "lay", "to put" 204. فَجْرَةٌ "forest".
- الْمَعَلِمُ "play" (Imperf.) لَعِبَ 205. لَعِبَ

Thirty-second Lesson

1

"two big asses"	جَهَارٌ كَبِيرٌ
"the two big asses"	الْجِهَارُانِ الْكَبِيرَانِ (۱)
"these two big asses"	هَذَانِ الْجِهَارَانِ
"two big cows"	بَهْرَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
"these two cows"	هَذَانِ الْبَهْرَانِ

(i) There are three numbers in Arabic : Singular, Dual (which

The Dual is expressed by adding of the termination **كَانْ** (see below page 90); Plural (see below page 90) denotes the number **two** of things) and Plural (see below page 90).

to the singular, thus:  
 الْكَلْبَانِ "the two dogs",  
 هُدَانِ "two big dogs",  
 هَذَا "this dog",  
 هَذَانِ "these two dogs".

Q2) Nouns ending in **ā** (**Tā Marbutā** see above 31 (33) ) change the **ā**

<p>"the possessor of <b>two</b> asses"</p> <p>صاحب <b>هَارِيْنِ</b> كَبِيرِيْنِ (١)</p>	<p>من هَارِيْنِ الْحِمَارِيْنِ</p> <p>أَلْهَيْنِ الْبَرِيْنِ</p>
<p>"from these <b>two</b> asses"</p> <p>مِنْ هَارِيْنِ الْحِمَارِيْنِ</p>	<p>أَلْهَيْنِ الْبَرِيْنِ</p>
<p>"on these <b>two</b> cows"</p> <p>عَلَى هَتَيْنِ الْبَرِيْنِ</p>	<p>أَلْهَيْنِ الْبَرِيْنِ</p>

رأيت هاتين البقرتين  
"I saw these two cows"

termination **ئىنْ**<sup>°</sup> for both the Genitive and the Accusative  
(see above lesson 25) e. g.:

أَلْكُلْبَانِ فِي الْبَسْطَانِ  
The two dogs are in the garden.

**صَاحِبُ الْيَتَمَيْرِ** "the possessor of the two houses"  
 فِي الْيَتَمَيْرِ "in the two houses"  
 رَأَيْتُ الْيَتَمَيْرِ "I saw the two houses"  
 رَأَيْتُ الْبَقَرَيْرِ "I saw these two cows"

رأيت هاتين البقرتين saw these two cows

Translate: 1. This school is small and that school is big  
2. Where is the she-cat of the sister? — her she-cat is in that room  
3. This room is big and that room is small  
4. Does thy (masc) brother know where is the director of this

ت. (Tā Ḥawīlā) before the Dual-termination e.g. بَيْرَتَانٰ "Beirut" into بَيْرَتَانٰنٰ "these two cows".

"the two asseses of the baker"	<b>جَهَارًا أَنْجَلْبَازِيَانْ</b>	(1)
"the two big asseses of the baker"	<b>جَهَارًا أَنْجَلْبَازِيَانْ كِبِيرَيَانْ</b>	
"his two asseses"	<b>جَهَارًا هِسْلَبَازِيَانْ</b>	
"his two big asseses"	<b>جَهَارًا هِسْلَبَازِيَانْ كِبِيرَيَانْ</b>	
"from thy (masc.) two asseses"	<b>مِنْ جَهَارِيَكَ تِلْكَتِيَانْ</b>	
"I saw thy (masc.) two asseses"	<b>رَأَيْتَ جَهَارِيَكَ تِلْكَتِيَانْ</b>	

- (1) The final نِ of the Dual-termination falls out when the Dual is followed by the Genitive. For example:
- "in the two gardens of my brother"

Note 3: **نِكْتِيَانْ** "you (masc. and fem.) two have" (see above page 15).

**لِكِيمَا** "they (masc. and fem.) two have".

**كِتَابِكَ** "your (Dual masc. and fem.) book" (see above page 22).

- (see above page 63, note 1).
- and also:** **جَهَارَكَ** "thy (masc.) two asseses";
- جَهَارَكَ** "his two big asseses";
- جَهَارَكَ** "I saw thy (masc.) two asseses".

Note 1: **كِتَبَتِيَانْ** "you (masc. and fem.) two have written" (see above page 28).

**كِتَبَتِيَانْ** "they (masc.) two have written" (see above).

**كِتَبَتِيَانْ** "they (fem.) two have written" (see above).

Note 2: **تِكْتِيَانْ** "you (masc. and fem.) two will write" or: "you two write" (see above page 48).

**تِكْتِيَانْ** "they (masc. and fem.) two will write" or: "they two write".

For the first person there is no special Dual form e.g. **كِتَبَتِيَانْ** "we two have written" or: "we

(more than two) have written" (see above p. 28), **نِكْتِيَانْ** "we two shall write" or: "we (more than two) shall write" (see above page 48).

صَنْبَرَاتَانِ وَبَقْرَتَاهُ كَبِيرَاتَانِ ٤. أَخْيَ قَسْمَ قَطْعَةٍ  
أَجْبَنِ إِلَى قَسْمَينِ. هُوَ أَكْلَ الْقِسْمِ الْأَوَّلَ وَاجْتَهِي  
أَكْلَتِ الْقِسْمِ الْآخِرَ ٥. إِشْتَرَتِ الْيَوْمَ بَهْرَيْنِ.

بَقْرَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ قَبْلَ الظَّهَرِ وَبَقْرَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ بَعْدَ الظَّهَرِ.  
الْبَقْرَهُ الْأَوَّلَ صَغِيرَهُ وَالْآخِرَهُ كَبِيرَهُ ٦. هَذَا  
أَكْبَرُ سَنًا مِنْهُ ٧. كَبِيرُ الْسِنِينِ ٨. أَكْبَرُ الْأَكْبَانِ صَمِيرَانِ وَهَذَانِ الْبَقْرَتَانِ  
أَخْبَاطٌ ٩. هَذَانِ الْأَكْبَانِ صَمِيرَانِ وَهَذَانِ الْبَقْرَتَانِ  
كَبِيرَاتَانِ ١٠. الَّذِي أَشْتَرَتِ فِي الْشَّوْفِيِّ  
أَجْدِيدِيِّ أَرْنَصُ مِنْ الْحَبْزِنِ الَّذِي أَشْتَرَتِ فِي  
الْأَدْكَانِ ١١. وَمِنْ قَلْقَ الْجَبْرَزَةِ الَّتِي تَكَاثَتْ عَلَى  
الْمَائِدَهُ فِي غَرْقَهِيِّ وَمِنْ أَكْلِ لَبَهَا ١٢. سَلِيمُ فَلَقْبَهَا  
وَأَكْلَ لَبَهَا ١٣. هَذَانِ الْأَكْرَمَانِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ  
وَيْزَانِ أَخْيِي ١٤. هَذَانِ الْجَمْرَيْدَانِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ  
جَرِيدَيِّ زَيْدِي ١٥. هَذَانِ الْجَمَارَانِ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ  
جَمَارَاتِ ١٦. لَكَ كَرْمَانِ وَلَكْمَ بَيْتَانِ.

Vocabulary: 206 قَسْمٌ "to divide" (Imperf. قَسْمٌ)  
أَخْيٌ 209. آخِرٌ (أَوَّلٌ "first") (fem.) أوَّلٌ 208 قَسْمٌ  
أَكْلٌ 210 (أَخْرِيٌّ fem.) (إِشْتَرَتْهُ "he bought")  
بَقْرَةٌ 211. (وَاحِدَهُ one) (fem. tooth)  
سَنٌ 212. (أَكْبَرُ سَنًا منْهُ old) كَبِيرُ الْسِنِينِ 213  
أَكْبَرُ 214. هَذَانِ (هَذَانِ) (fem. "these two")  
الَّذِي 215. (which), "who"  
أَخْبَاطٌ 216. (الَّتِي لَبٌ) (fem. split) "marrow", "cores"  
كَبِيرَاتَانِ 217. هَذَانِ الْأَكْبَانِ صَمِيرَانِ وَهَذَانِ الْبَقْرَتَانِ  
أَكْبَرُ 218. ( masc. and fem.) bigger" and also : "are  
(masc. and fem.) bigger"

### Thirty-fourth Lesson

١. قَسْمٌ إِبْرَاهِيمٌ قَطْعَةُ الْحَجَرِ إِلَى قَسْمَيْنِ. يَمْ  
وَضَعَ سُكَّلَ وَاحِدٌ مِنْ الْقَسْمَيْنِ فِي كَعْكَهَةِ مِنْ الْمَيْزَانِ  
وَمِنْ زَانِ أَخْيِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مِيزَانِ جَدَلَ ٣. مَا
٢. مِيزَانِ أَخْيِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مِيزَانِ جَدَلَ ٣. مَا  
فَعَلَتْ يَالْسَكَرَ الَّذِي أَشْتَرَتِ فِي الْشَّوْفِيِّ الْجَدِيدِيِّ

لأنه يحيى أرسم لي سياراتين فرسم أحواك سياراتين  
هـ دهب أخي وأختي إلى المدرسة قبل الظهر  
ورجعا من هناك بعد الظهر هـ ابن أخي وأختك هـ  
ـها ذهبا إلى المدرسة هـ من ابن رجعنا أنا وأخي هـ  
ـاشا رجعنا من المدرسة و هذا الكتاب  
رجيم و ذلك الكتاب أرخص منه يقليل ٥١  
شربت قليلا من الحليب وأكلت قليلاً من  
اللحوم وأخي أكل وشرب أكثر مني هـ بينما أخي  
المجيد يدان أكبر من بيته سليم يكتبه هـ ١٢ أختنا  
ـ سليم كتبنا وقرأنا اليوم كتابا هـ ما ذهب  
اليوم إلى المدرسة لأن أبي مريض هو أخي ما  
ذهب اليوم إلى المدرسة لأن أبي مريض لأنه مريض هـ ١٣ ما ذهب

**Vocabulary:** 218 ἀθηναῖος, "Athenian"; 219 ἄλλος, "all", "whole"

(كُلُّ بَيْتٍ) "the whole house" — makes the next noun to be in the genitive e.g. كُلُّ أَبْيَتٍ or: كُلُّ الْبَيْتِ "every" (أَبْيَتٌ تِبْلِي)

كَفَةٌ "a scale of a balance", 221 مَيزَانٌ "balance", 220

فَعَلَ بْ "to do"; 223 "with"; "by", "in", بـ ) "with me", 222

لَيْكَ،<sup>لَيْكَ</sup> "سُكَّر" "sugar", 224 225 (see above page 15) etc.

"firstly", 226 ةَعْمَل "automobile", 227 لَهُ "they (Dual masc. and

لأن 231 | (شيءٌ من) "more than"; "much" 230 | تشير

مُرِيْضٌ	"SICK".	قال	233
بِـ	"because",	232	لَمْ يَقُلْ

Translate: 1. The two doas of my brother are in the *imperative*:

garden of thy (masc.) sister    2. The two big hares are in the vineyard of the uncle (on the father's side)    3. I have two houses

and my father too has two houses. His two houses are in the new market. 4. The two cows of my grand-mother are fatter

than the two cows of the tailor  
papers of the director? — They (two) are on the table in the

room of the father 6. The house of the baker and his  
garden 7. Her two oxen are bigger than his two oxen

8. The two dogs of the tailor and his two hares  
asses of my aunt (on the mother's side) and her two camels 10. He  
9. The two

has one ass and two oxen and we have two asses and one ox.

## Thirty-fifth Lesson

مکالمہ  
دہلی

هُرَيْلَانْ وَجَدَنَا يَطْلُمْهُ جَبِنْ وَدَهْبَنْ بِهَا إِلَى الْقِرْد

كَيْ يَهْسِمُهَا بِيَهْمَكَ، فَأَخْذَ الْفَرْدَ الْجَبِيدَةَ وَقَسْمَهَا

إلى قسمين أحدهما أكبر من الآخر. ثم وضمه كمل

فَرَجَحَ مِنْ مِيزَانِهِ .

وَكُلُّهُ مُعْتَدِلٌ بِسَنَابِهِ وَمُكَلَّمٌ  
أَلْتَسْمُ الْأَكْبَرُ . فَأَخَذَ مِنْهُ قَلْبًا

قال: أريد أن أسلوّه بالآخر. ولكن إذ كان

ما أخذته منه أكثر من اللازم وجمِّلَ الأصوات.

**فَعَمِّلْهُ** **هَذَا** **مَا** **فَعَمِّلَهُ** **هَذَا** **مَا** **فَعَلَهُ**

أَنْتَ أَمَا زَالَ إِلَيْكُمْ مِنْ  
الْقَسْطَنْطِنْيَةِ مُنْتَهٍ

أَكْلُ الْأَذْيَنَةِ مُكْبَرًا.

أَسْعِلُهُ : إِنَّمَا يَعْلَمُ مَا يَعْمَلُ اللَّهُ أَعْلَمُ بِذَهَابِهِ

**لَذَا دَهْسَا بِالْجَنْبَةِ إِلَى الْقَرْدِ؛ مَا فَسَلَ الْقَرْدُ**

## Thirty-sixth Lesson

وَلَذَنْ صَفِيرَانْ وَجَدَا جُورَهْ لِكَهْتْ شَجَرَهْ جُوزْ  
وَقَدَّارَهْ أَحَدَهُمَا: هَذِهْ جَوْزَيَ الْأَبْنَى زَانِيَهَا أَوْلَاهْ  
لَا بَلْ هَيَ لِلْأَبْنَى رَعْتَهَا مِنْ الْأَرْضِ.

"in order that he divide" 235. بَيْنَهُ بَيْنَهُ "between" 236. بَيْنَهُمَا "between them" 237. one of them (dual) أَحَدُهُمَا

"piece of cheese" 237. رِبْطَةٌ مِّنْ جَبَنةٍ 238. "to outweigh" 239. أَوْأَدَ (plur: أَوْأَدَاتٍ) 240. (أسنانٌ مِّسْنَانٌ) "to make equal" 241. (إِرْبَدٌ: Imperfect) أَسَاوَى 242. لَكِنْ (اساوی) "to desire" 243. (وَلَكِنْ وَلَكِنْ لَكِنْ) "since", "because" 244. حَتَّىٰ "until", "necessarily" 245. زَالَ "to cease" 246. مَمَّا = مِنْ مَمَّا "until"

فَتَشَاجَرَ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مُسَاجِرَةً شَدِيدَةً . وَبَيْنَمَا هُمَا

فِي هَذِهِ الْمُسَاجِرَةِ قَدِ ابْلَدَ أَخْرَ قَدْ تَسْرِيبٌ

مِنْهُمَا . وَكَانَ هَذَا الْوَلَدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُمَا سِنًا وَقَالَ

لَهُمَا: إِنَّا أَرِفُونَ بَيْنَكُمَا . فَوَقَفَ بَيْنَهُمَا وَبَعْدَ مَا

سَمِعَ طَلْبَةً كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا قَدْلَقَ الْجَوْزَةَ وَقَالَ:

الْمُسِرَّةُ الْأَوَّلَ لَيْنَ رَأَى الْجَوْزَةَ أُولَآ وَاقْتَشَرَهُ الْأَخْرَى لَيْنَ رَفَعَهَا مِنَ الْأَرْضِ . أَمَّا الْأَلْهَ فَهُوَ

لِي جَرَاءُ الْقَضَاءِ .

**أَسْعَلَهُ:** الْوَلَادَانِ الصَّغِيرَانِ مَا وَجَدَاهُ أَيْنَ

وَجَدَهَا الْجَوْزَةَ ؟ مَا قَالَ أَحَدُهُمَا وَمَا قَالَ الْآخَرُ ،

مَمَّى تَسْرِبَ مِنْهُمَا وَلَدَ أَخْرَ ؟ أَكَانَ هَذَا الْوَلَدُ أَصْغَرُ سِنًا مِنْهُمَا ؟ مَا قَالَ لَهُمَا ؟ بَعْدَ مَا سَمِعَ طَلْبَةً كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا مَا قَوَلَ ؟ كَيْفَ وَقَوْقَ بَيْنَهُمَا

**Vocabulary:** 248. جُوزٌ "nut" 249. أَثَاثٌ "the second" 250. شَاجَرٌ "quarrel"

253. شَدِيدٌ "strong"; "violent" 254. بَيْنَمَا "while" 255. إِذَا [إِذَا يُشُورُ] (followed by a verb) "when"; "if" 256. بَشِّرْ "see!" ; "behold!"

257. قَدْ "Behold, an ox died" ) 258. قَدْ is a particle which is often put before the perfect to express the completion or certainty of the action and can sometimes be translated "already" but often it is to be left untranslated 259. ( Imperf.: تَقْرَبُ مِنْ "to approach" 260. وَقَفَ (بَيْنَ) ( Imperf.: سَمِعَ طَلْبَةً كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا قَدْلَقَ الْجَوْزَةَ وَقَالَ:

261. سَمِعَ "to hear" ( Imperf.: مَمَّا [اسْمَعَ] جَزَّأَيْ "reward" 262. طَلْبَةً "demand"; "request" 263. قُسْرٌ "rind"; "shell" 264. قَسْنَلَيْ "judgment". "as for"; "as to" 265. جَزَّأَيْ "reward" 266. قَسْنَلَيْ "judgment".

### Translate:

- My brother stood between the grandfather and the sister.
- What did he hear in the room of the director? — he heard there that thou (masc.) art ill.
- My sister took the meat and divided it in two parts.
- Where is the new book which I bought in the new shop? — thy (masc.) sister put it on the new table.
- thy (fem.) two cows are fatter than the two cows of my grand-mother.
- His two houses are nearer than thy (masc.) two houses.
- I have two new books and he too has two new books.
- Where are the two asses? — They (dual) are in the garden.
- Where are the two new houses of the tailor? — they (dual) are in the new market.
- We have two oxen and she also has two oxen.
- My two asses are bigger than the two asses of my brother.
- When did thy (masc.) teacher visit our uncle (on the mother's side)? — he visited him in the after-noon.
- Her grand-mother visited to-day the mother of the teacher.
- Where did you (masc.) learn the Arabic language? — I learned it in school.

## Thirty-seventh Lesson

A

"bakers"	بَشَارُونَ (1) أَنْبَازُونَ
"the bakers"	الْبَشَارُونَ (2) الْأَنْبَازُونَ
"These bakers"	هُوَلَاءُ أَنْبَازِيْنَ
"the house of the bakers"	بَيْتٌ أَنْبَازِيْنَ (2)
"I saw the bakers"	رَأَيْتُ أَنْبَازِيْنَ (1)
"the teachers of my brother"	مَعْلُومُ أَخِيٍّ (3)
"the teachers of my brother"	إِلَى مَعْلُومِي أَخِيٍّ
"to the teachers of my brother"	إِلَى مَعْلُومِي أَخِيٍّ
"I saw the teachers of my brother"	رَأَيْتُ مَعْلُومِي أَخِيٍّ
"thy (masc.) teachers"	مَعْلُومُكَ
"the room of thy (masc.) teachers"	عُرْفَةُ مَعْلُومِكَ
"I saw thy (masc.) teachers"	رَأَيْتُ مَعْلُومِكَ

- (1) The plural of masculines is formed by adding to the singular the termination وَنْ thus: "bakers" بَشَارُونَ "baker" بَشَارٌ
- (2) The plural of masculines has the termination وَنْ for the Genitive and

Nominative and the termination يَنْ for the Genitive and

Accusative (See above Lesson 32 B. (1)) e. g.

أَنْبَازُونَ فِي الْمَسْتَانِ "the bakers are in the garden";

بَشَارُونَ رَأَيْتُهُ أَنْبَازِيْنَ "I saw the house of the bakers";

بَشَارُونَ رَأَيْتُهُ أَنْبَازِيْنَ "the bakers are in the garden";

"The final نَ of the plural masculine termination is omitted when the plural is followed by a genitive e. g.

"the teachers of my brother" (and also: مَعْلُومُ أَخِيٍّ "the teachers of my brother" (and also: مَعْلُومُ أَخِيٍّ with an Alif (ا) after the وَ);

"the room of the teachers of my brother"; عُرْفَةُ مَعْلُومِي أَخِيٍّ "the room of the teachers of my brother"; رَأَيْتُ مَعْلُومِي أَخِيٍّ "I saw the teachers of my brother".

and also: مَعْلُومُهُ "his teachers"; عُرْفَةُ مَعْلُومِكَ "the room of thy (masc.) teachers" etc.

B

"(female) teachers"	مَعْلُومَاتٌ (1) الْمَعْلُومَاتُ
"the (female) teachers"	الْمَعْلُومَاتُ
"from the (female) teachers"	مِنْ الْمَعْلُومَاتِ (2) مَعْلُومَاتِهَا
"her (female) teachers"	مَعْلُومَاتِهَا

- (1) The plural of feminine nouns is formed by changing وَنْ

مُسْرِفٌ مَعْلِمَاتٍ e.g. "female) teachers" (singular: مُعْلِمَةٌ "female teacher")

(2) The plural of the feminines has the termination **أَتٌ** for the Nominative and the termination **أَتٌ** for the Genitive and Accusative e. g.

الأَرْبَعَ هِيَ الْشَّرْقُ وَالْغَربُ وَالشَّمَاءُ وَالْجَنُوبُ  
هُنَّا تَعْلَمَتَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ — تَعْلَمَتُ الْيَوْمَ

الْجِهَاتُ الْأَرْبَعَ 7. مُعْلِمُوكَ زَارُوا مُعْلِمَيْ أَخْيَ  
فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ 8. أَيْنَ أَخْرُو الْجَبَارِ الصَّعِيبِ؟ — هُوَ

يَلْعَبُ الْأَسَانِ أَمَامَ الْبَسْتَانِ وَيَصْبِحُ يَسْوَرَتَ كَالِ

وَمَنْ صَاحَ أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ قَبْلَ الظَّهَرِ؟ — أَخْرُو الْجَبَارِ  
الصَّعِيبِ لَعِبَ وَصَاحَ أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ 10. هُوَ لَا

**Note :** There are some feminine nouns which take the plural termination of the masculine nouns and some masculine nouns which take the plural termination of the feminines e. g.  
"the room of the (female) teachers"; "the room of the (female) teachers are  
in the room"; "the (female) teachers are in the room"; "the (female) teachers are  
for the Genitive and Accusative e. g.

الْمَعْلِمَاتُ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ  
هُنَّا تَعْلَمَتَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ — تَعْلَمَتُ الْيَوْمَ  
الْجِهَاتُ الْأَرْبَعَ 7. مُعْلِمُوكَ زَارُوا مُعْلِمَيْ أَخْيَ  
فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ 8. أَيْنَ أَخْرُو الْجَبَارِ الصَّعِيبِ؟ — هُوَ

يَلْعَبُ الْأَسَانِ أَمَامَ الْبَسْتَانِ وَيَصْبِحُ يَسْوَرَتَ كَالِ  
وَمَنْ صَاحَ أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ قَبْلَ الظَّهَرِ؟ — أَخْرُو الْجَبَارِ  
الصَّعِيبِ لَعِبَ وَصَاحَ أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ 10. هُوَ لَا

الْمَعْلِمَونَ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي النَّابِهِ وَأَلَّا يَكُونُ  
أَنْسَامُهُنَّ لَا يَسْرُبُونَ هُنُّا وَلَا يَكُونُ  
لَهُمْ إِنْجِزْتَرِيرِ 2. مُعْلِمُوكَ زَارُوكَ  
الْغُرْفَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ وَالْأَنْكَلِيزِيَّةَ 12. أَيْنَ كَلْبَيَ  
الْأَسَانِ؟ — هُوَ الْأَسَانِ فِي غُرْفَةِ الْجَدَدَةِ 13. الْمَعْلِمُونَ  
وَالْمَعْلِمَاتُ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْقَدْسِ 14. أَيْنَ مُعْلِمَاتُ  
هُنَّدِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ — هُنَّ فِي كَرْمِ بَدَقِيِّ.

فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْلَّغَةُ الْإِنْجِلِيزِيَّةُ — نَعَمْ تَعْلَمْتُهَا  
هُنَّلَّا وَمَا هِيَ الْجِهَاتُ الْأَرْبَعُ وَ— الْجِهَاتُ

الْأَرْبَعَ هِيَ الْشَّرْقُ وَالْغَربُ وَالشَّمَاءُ وَالْجَنُوبُ  
هُنَّا تَعْلَمَتَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ — تَعْلَمَتُ الْيَوْمَ

الْجِهَاتُ الْأَرْبَعَ 7. مُعْلِمُوكَ زَارُوكَ مُعْلِمَيْ أَخْيَ  
فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ 8. أَيْنَ أَخْرُو الْجَبَارِ الصَّعِيبِ؟ — هُوَ

يَلْعَبُ الْأَسَانِ أَمَامَ الْبَسْتَانِ وَيَصْبِحُ يَسْوَرَتَ كَالِ

وَمَنْ صَاحَ أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ قَبْلَ الظَّهَرِ؟ — أَخْرُو الْجَبَارِ  
الصَّعِيبِ لَعِبَ وَصَاحَ أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ 10. هُوَ لَا

الْمَعْلِمَونَ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي النَّابِهِ وَأَلَّا يَكُونُ  
أَنْسَامُهُنَّ لَا يَسْرُبُونَ هُنُّا وَلَا يَكُونُ  
لَهُمْ إِنْجِزْتَرِيرِ 2. مُعْلِمُوكَ زَارُوكَ  
الْغُرْفَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ وَالْأَنْكَلِيزِيَّةَ 12. أَيْنَ كَلْبَيَ  
الْأَسَانِ؟ — هُوَ الْأَسَانِ فِي غُرْفَةِ الْجَدَدَةِ 13. الْمَعْلِمُونَ  
وَالْمَعْلِمَاتُ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْقَدْسِ 14. أَيْنَ مُعْلِمَاتُ  
هُنَّدِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ — هُنَّ فِي كَرْمِ بَدَقِيِّ.

Vocabulary: 267. مُسْلِمٌ "Moslem" 268. شَجَرٌ "wine"  
 269. حَمَارٌ "pig" 270. حَامِمٌ "mosque" 271. حَمَارَةٌ "pig" 272. تَعْلِمَ "to learn"  
 273. لُغَةٌ "language" 274. عَرَبِيٌّ "Arabic" 275. شَارِعٌ "street"

أَنْكِلِيزِيٌّ "English" 276. إِنْكِلِيزِيٌّ "American" 277. بَحْرٌ "sea" 278. أَرْبَعٌ "four" 279. شَرْقٌ "east" 280. غَربٌ "west" 281. نَهَارٌ "day" 282. جَنُوبٌ "south" 283. أَمَامٌ "before" 284. صَاحَبٌ "shout" 285. صَوْتٌ "voice" 286. كَالٌ "high" 287. أَقْدَسٌ "Jerusalem" 288. هُولَاءُ "these" (masc and  
 fem.) 289. أَوْلَاءُ "those" (m. and f.).

عَرَبِيٌّ "Arabic"; "Arabian" (fem. "Arabic") 271. "quarter" 272. "town" 273. "language" 274. "Arabic" 275. شَارِعٌ "street" (عَرَبِيٌّ "Arabic") 276. إِنْكِلِيزِيٌّ "American" 277. بَحْرٌ "sea" 278. أَرْبَعٌ "four" 279. شَرْقٌ "east" 280. غَربٌ "west" 281. نَهَارٌ "day" 282. جَنُوبٌ "south" 283. أَمَامٌ "before" 284. صَاحَبٌ "shout" 285. صَوْتٌ "voice" 286. كَالٌ "high" 287. أَقْدَسٌ "Jerusalem" 288. هُولَاءُ "these" (masc and  
 fem.) 289. أَوْلَاءُ "those" (m. and f.).

Translate:

is in the Jaffa street 2. Our uncle (on the father's side) was to-day in Jerusalem and my teacher too was there 3. Where is now my small sister? — She plays in front of the mosque 4. This street is longer than that street 5. The bakers were today in the garden of the grand-father 6. Who saw the tailors to-day? — I saw the tailors in the after-noon 7. The teachers of this school were to-day in the vineyard of my brother 8. I learned the English language in this school 9. Where did thy (masc.) son learn the Arabic language? — He learned the Arabic language in Jaffa 10. The director and the teachers of this school (in Arabic: The director of this school and its teachers) have returned to-day from Jerusalem.

### Thirty-ninth Lesson

#### الْجَمَاهِيرُ الْأَرْبَعُ

لَا رَبَّ اَحَدٌ مِنَ الْمُدْرِسَةِ سَائِدٌ اَمْهُ : مَا تَعْلَمْتَ فِي الْمُدْرِسَةِ . قَدَّارٌ اَحَدٌ تَعْلَمْنَا اَجْهَاتٍ  
 الْاَرْبَعَ . وَهِيَ اَشْرَقُ وَالْغَرْبُ وَالشَّمَاءُ وَالْجَنُوبُ .  
 وَقَدْ قَالَ لَنَا الْمُعَلِّمُ اِنَّ الْجَهَةَ الَّتِي يُشَرِّفُ مَبْهَأ  
 الْشَّمْسِ هِيَ الْمِسْرَقُ وَالْجَهَةُ الَّتِي تَعْنِيبُ فَنَهَا  
 الْشَّمْسُ هِيَ الْغَرْبُ وَالْجَهَةُ تَكُونُ عَلَى يَمِينِنَا  
 إِذَا قَابَنَا جِهَةً اَشْرَقٍ هِيَ الْجَنُوبُ وَالْجَهَةُ تَكُونُ  
 عَلَى يَسِيرِنَا هِيَ الشَّمَاءُ .

فَوَقَدْنِيهِ اَمْهُ يُوجِّهُهُ إِلَى جِهَةِ الْغَرْبِ وَقَالَتْ  
 لَهُ : سَمِّ لِي الْأَسَانِ الْجَهَاتِ وَأَشِيرُ عَلَيْهَا . فَقَالَ  
 اَحَدٌ : الْغَرْبُ اَمَّا يِ وَالشَّرْقُ خَلْفِي وَالشَّمَاءُ عَلَى  
 يَمِينِي وَالْجَنُوبُ عَلَى يَسِيرِي .

اسْعَلَهُ : لَمَّا رَجَعَ اَحَدٌ مِنَ الْمَدْرِسَةِ مَا سَأَلَهُ

## Fourtieth Lesson

أَمْهُ مَا أَجَابَ أَجَدْ ; مَا قَالَ أَعْلَمْ ؟ كِيمْ  
وَقَتْهُ أَمْهُ وَمَا قَالَتْ لَهُ ؟ مَا قَالَ أَجَدْ ؟

### الصلدی

Vocabulary: 290. لَمْ "whence"; 291. إِنْ "indeed"; 292. إِنْ "everily";

وَبِيَّنَما زَيْدٌ يَوْمًا فِي الْفَاعِلَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ.  
فَسَمِعَ فِي الْحَسَالِ كَانَ يَلْمَبُ هَنَالَكَ صَاحَ بَصَرَتْ عَالٍ : هَا هَا هَا .  
هَا هَا هَا . فَظَنَ زَيْدٌ أَنْ فِي الْأَنْتَابَةِ وَلَدًا أَخْرَ . لِأَنَّهُ كَبِيرٌ

إِنْ أَلْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ (verily) the house is big" ) 292. ( Only after  
the verb "to say". For example: قالَ إِنْ أَلْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ قَالَ "to say" .

"he said that the house is big" ) 293. إِنْ أَشْرَقَ (Impfect: sun" شَرَقَ " to rise  
قالَ إِنْ أَلْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ قَالَ لَا يَعْرِفُ مَا هُوَ الْمُسْدَى . قَالَ : مَنْ أَنْتَ يَا  
هَذَا ؟ فَسَمِعَ حَالًا الصَّوْتَ الْأَخْرَ يَوْمًا : مَنْ أَنْتَ يَا  
يَا هَذَا ؟ فَظَنَ زَيْدٌ أَنَّ الْوَلَدَ الْأَخْرَ يَهُزُّ بِهِ وَقَالَ :

إِنْ تَجَاهِلْ أَجَهْتِي . قَالَ أَنْتَ جَاهِلْ أَجَهْتِي .

قَالَ أَنْتَ جَاهِلْ أَجَهْتِي . إِنْ تَجَاهِلْ أَجَهْتِي .

وَقَعْضِيْبَ زَيْدَ وَرَفِيقَ صَوْتِهِ وَصَاحَ بَصَرَتْ  
وَجْهِهِ . وَقَدْ وَقَفَ مَعْنَى "opposite to" 300. وَقَفَ

إِشَارَ سَمِّ (Imperative: اسْمٌ ) 302. "face" 302. إِنْ "to name" (Imperative:

وَبِيَّنَما هُوَ يَصْبِحُ فَقَادَ يَابِيهِ قَدْ جَاءَ وَقَالَ لَهُ :  
يَا إِنْكَ يَا أَبْنِي لَا تَسْمِعَ إِلَّا صَدَى صَوْتِكَ . قَدْمَا خَلَفَ 305. "back" خَلَفَ (Ashir : Imperative : to indicate") 304.

يَابِينَ لَزِيدٌ أَمْرُ الْمُسْدَى حَجَلَ وَرَجَعَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ .  
خَلَفَهُ خَلَفَيْ خَلَفَيْ خَلَفَيْ خَلَفَيْ خَلَفَيْ -

## Fourty-first Lesson

**السُّعْلَةُ:** أَيْنَ كَانَ زَيْدٌ؟ مَا قَوْلُ هَنَاءِ؟ لَقَا

كلاب	"dogs"
بيوت	"houses"
كتاب	"books"
رجل	"men"
مدارس	"schools"
كلب	"a dog"
بيت	"a house"
كتاب	"a book"
رجل	"a man"
مدرسة	"a school"

In Arabic there are two kinds of plurals which are generally

known as the **sound** (or, the **strong**) and the **broken** (or, the **weak**) plurals.

**Sound plural** is the plural which is formed by adding the termination وَنْ to masculine nouns (see above page 90) and the

termination اتے to the feminine nouns (see above page 91, B).

**Broken plural** is the plural which is formed as follows:

١. By internal change such as كُلَّبْ : "dog", plural: كُلَّابْ .

2. By internal change and by the addition of a termination,  
 بیوْرَتْ "house", plural: بیوْرَتْ etc.

such as "minister", وَزِيرٌ، "rider", فَارسٌ، plural: وزراؤں، فرساؤں

**plural:** مُؤْنَسٌ etc.

3. By internal change and by the addition of a prefix, such as سببٌ "cause", plur. سببٌ أو لادٌ "child", plural: ولدٌ.

Note: لَأْنَ "because" لَيْ - لَا لِنَكَ "because" لِلَّذِي

"ashamed" to be ashamed of 319. بعد "after him";  
"after it".

316. بَيْنَ "to become clear"; "to be elucidate" 317. اِمْرٌ "matter";

become angry" 314. el "to come" 315 y "except"; "only"

فُلْنَ 310. **فِي الْحَالِ** "immediately" and also: "town" 309.

٣٠٧. يَوْمٌ "day" (يَوْمٌ "one day"; "once") ٣٠٨. مَكِينَةٌ "city"; مَكِينَةٌ "device".

Vocabulary: صَدَى "echo" | الصَّدَى "the echo"

**لِزَانْدَ** اُمُرُ الْمَعْدَى مَا قَالَ<sup>٢</sup>

جاء وقتها كان يصلي ما قال له أبوه؟ لما ذهب

ما قال ما سمع يعلمه؟ ما فعل بعد ذلك؟ من

بِهِ يَهُزُّ الْوَلَدُ إِذَا طَنَّ أَنَّهُ مَسْمَعٌ بَعْدَهُ وَلَمَّا طَنَّ

صَاحِبُ الْحَمَادَةِ مَا سَمِعَ ؟ مَا ظَنَ زَيْدٌ ؟ مَا وَالْ

**السُّعَالُ :** أَبْنَى  
كَانَ زَيْدٌ؛ إِمَامًا  
أَفْلَى مُهَنَّدًا؛ تَقَ

—98—

4. By internal change and by the addition of a termination as well as of a prefix, such as سُؤالٌ "question", plural: أَسْئَلَةٌ هذِهِ الْبَيْوَتُ كَبِيرَةٌ "these houses are big".

Note 1: Some nouns have two or more different forms of **broken plural**, such as بَحْرٌ "sea", plural: بَحْرُورٌ

أَبْحَارٌ and أَبْحَرٌ، بَحْرٌ

Some nouns have both the **sound** and the **broken-plurals**, such as بنْ "son", plural: بنْ and بنْيَةٌ :

Note 2: The forms of the **broken plural** are fairly numerous and usually cause the students some difficulty, though by no means as serious as it might appear at first sight.

The best way is to learn the plural of each noun together with its singular.

## B

"big houses"	بَيْوَتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ (1)
"big schools"	مَدَارِسٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
"big animals"	حَيْوَانَاتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ (2)
"these houses"	هَذِهِ الْمَدَرَسَةُ
"these schools"	هَذِهِ الْمَدَارِسُ
"these animals"	هَذِهِ الْحَيْوَانَاتُ
Aينَ الْكُتُبُ الْجَدِيدَةُ؟ — هيَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي	أَيْنَ الْكُتُبُ الْجَدِيدَةُ؟ — هِيَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي
"Where are the new books? — they are on my table"	

(1) The **broken-plurals** are treated as feminine singulars thus: هذِهِ الْبَيْوَتُ كَبِيرَةٌ "these houses are big"

هذِهِ الْكُتُبُ رِيجِنَسْتَرٌ. اِشْتَرَيْتَهَا فِي الْمَكَانِ الْعَادِلِ الْأَوَّلِ الْأَرْبَاعِ الْأَنْجَلِيَّةِ "these books are cheap, I bought them in the shop"

**Exceptions** are the nouns which denote persons e. g.

هذِهِ الْأَرْجَالُ : "these men" and not "these legs" هذِهِ الْمُجَيَّبُونَ الْأَوَّلَادُ الْمُجَيَّبُونَ "the diligent pupils"

- 2) When the noun which does not denote persons is in the **sound-plural** it is also treated as a feminine singular e. g. هذِهِ الْحَيْوَانَاتُ كَبِيرَةٌ "these animals are big".

## Fourty-second Lesson

1. أينَ الْجَرَائدُ الَّتِي اِشْتَرَيْتَهَا قَبْلَ الظَّاهِرِ؟

هيَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي 2. أينَ اِشْتَرَيْتَ هَذِهِ الْقَاتِرَنَّ الْجَدِيدَةِ؟ — اِشْتَرَيْتَهَا فِي الْمَكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ 3. خَذْ

هَذِهِ الْمَدَرَسَةَ وَأَرْسِمْهُ رَجْمًا عَلَى الْوَرَاجِ 4. الْوَرَاجُ هَذِهِ الْمَدَارِسُ "this school"

أَسْوَدٌ وَأَطْبَاسِيرٌ أَبْيَضٌ 5. سَفَنَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ مِنْ أَلْثَمِنَ الَّتِي رَأَيْتَهَا فِي الصَّبَاجِ قَدْ غَرَقَتْ بَعْدَ

أَلْظَاهِرِ 6. الدَّبُّ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْدَّسْبِ وَالْفَيلُ أَكْبَرُ

من الذئب. و رأيت اليوم تلاميذ هذه المدرسة في الأحياء القرية من يافا 8. متى أشتريت هذه الكلتب؟ — أشتريتها في السنة الماضية و يكم بائع الفلاح الشعيب و يكم أشتري أحجار؟ — الفلاح يقع الشعيب بلدة فلسطينية وأشتري أحجار يليونتين قلسطينيين 10. هنا أنا تاجر و شريكه فتحا دكانا جديداً في السوق الجديده 11. شر�� هذه الشركه أغنى من شركاء تلك الشركه 12. هذه الآراء أكبر من تلك الآراء 13. أليسوت في هذا البيت كان اليوم الفتى في البستان 2. صاحب أشارع أكبر من البيوت الذي في ذلك الشارع مجتهدون وأولئك التلاميذ كشلانون 4. هذه المدارس أكبر من تلك المدارس و أين تركت كلاب جدي؟ — تركتها في الكلن 6. هذه البيوت أكبر من بيوت ذلك الشارع 7. متى أشتريت هذه اليدولة؟ — أشتريتها الأبراج 8. ما

**Vocabulary:** 320. أخذ imperative of خذ 321. طباشير "bear" (plur. *bab*) 322. سفينة "ship" (plur. *chalik*) 323. رجال "men" (plur. *man*) 324. غرق "to sink"; "to drown" (Imperf. *aqraq*) 325. ذئب "wolf" (plur. *wolf*) 326. سنوات "years" (plur. *year*) 327. سنة "year" (plur. *year*) 328. (سنوات also and سنون) past (الماضية) 329. كم "how many?"; "how much?" 330. باع "sell" (Imperf. *balaj*) 331. (بيع "peasant" "farmer" (مشكله) 332. شريك "partner" (plur. *shrik*) 333. تاجر "merchant" (شريكه) 334. تجارة "company"; "partnership" 335. شركه "company"; "partnership".

### Fourty-third Lesson

1. زرع الفلاح اليوم لفتا في البستان 2. صاحب البيت كان اليوم في القرية وأشتري هناك من الفلاحين بينما يليون فلسطينية و هو لا تلاميذ مجتهدون وأولئك التلاميذ كشلانون 4. هذه المدارس أكبر من تلك المدارس و أين تركت كلاب جدي؟ — تركتها في الكلن 6. هذه البيوت أكبر من بيوت ذلك الشارع 7. متى أشتريت هذه اليدولة؟ — أشتريتها الأبراج 8. ما

Translate: 1. These farmers are richer than those farmers  
2. Where did you (maad) buy these new books? — I bought them  
in the new shop      3. These pupils are lazy and those pupils  
are diligent      4. The possessor of these houses is rich. He is  
richer than the possessor of those houses      5. Where are the  
dogs of the grand-father? — they are (in Arabic. she is) in the  
garden of the neighbour. 6. The pupils of this school have been  
to-day in the forest and the pupils of that school were there  
yester-day      7. The new house is bigger than the old house  
8. My brother sold his old house and bought a new house

9. I saw yesterday a big bed in a cage 10. The schools in this village are small. They are (in Arabic: she is) smaller than the schools in that village 11. These copy-books are cheaper than those copy-books 12. These new houses are smaller than those old houses 13. These bakers are rich. They are richer than those bakers.

## Forty-fourth Lesson

### امثال

1. رَأَسُ الْحِكْمَةِ خَافَةُ اللَّهِ
2. رَأَسُ أَكْفَالِنَ مَعْلُومُ الشَّيْطَانِ
3. مِنْ كُرْتَةِ الْمَلَاحِينَ غَرَقَتِ السَّيْفَيْنِ
4. الْاسْعَادُ وَالْأَعْمَارُ بَيْدِ اللَّهِ
5. رَاحَةُ الْجَسْمِ فِي قِلَّةِ الْطَّعَامِ
6. هَذَا الْجَمَارُ يَلِيَّةٌ وَسِرْجُهُ يَلِيَّنِ

الْمُعْلِمُ: قَدْ سَافَرَ يَا مُعْلِمِي.  
الْمُتَلَمِّدُ: وَبَيْنَ الْمَطَّارِ

بَيْدِهِ وَرَسَمَ عَلَى الْمَوْرِ خَطَبِنِ مُسْتَقِبِنِ وَمَا رَسَمَ الْمُنْظَارِ.

Vocabulary: 354. قِطَارٌ "train"; "railway train" 355. سَافَرَ "travel"; "to make a journey" 356. رَأَسُ "head"; "beginning"  
"to travel"; "to make a journey" 356. رَأَسُ "head"; "beginning"  
"fear"; خَافَةٌ "fear"; خَافَةٌ حِكْمَةٌ 358. "wisdom" (روءوسٌ: plural)  
كَثْرَةٌ "abundance"; "multiplicity" 359. اللهُ "Allah"; "God" 360. أَلَّهُ "Allah" 361. سِعْدٌ "current price"; "rate" (عُمُرٌ: (أسعارٌ (أَسْعَادٌ: "age"; "life-time" (plural, singular, "body". 365. بَشَّمٌ "smallness"; "smallness"; قِلَّةٌ 366. طَعَامٌ "food", "nourishment" 367. "speech", "talk" كَلَامٌ 368. سَرْجٌ "saddle" (plur. سُرْجٌ).

## Forty-fifth Lesson

### الشريكات

شاركَ دِبٌ فِي قَلَاحٍ فِي زِرْاغَةٍ وَأَنْتَهَا فِي الْعَنْتَةِ  
 (يُبَتِّ) في حَقْلٍ فِي زَرْعٍ "sowing", "planting" 371. "field," 372. "field." 373. "to grow", "to sprout" (Imperf.)  
 لَمَّا 374. "soil", "ground" 375. "above", "on" 376. "زَرْبَةٌ" "زَرْبَةٌ "above" 376. "above", "on" 375.  
 الأولى أن ياخذ الفلاح ما يبيت تحبت التربية  
 "لَتَسْيِيمٌ" 377. "division" 378. "مزدوج" (أَوْرَاقٌ : وَرْقٌ)  
 مَخْدُوعٌ "deceived"  
 وأَلْبَرٌ مَا فَوْقَهَا  
 قَرَّعَما لِفَتَّا. وَلَكَا حَانَ وَقْتُ التَّقْسِيمِ  
 الفلاح رُؤوسُ الْأَفْتَ وَأَعْصَى الْأَدَبِ الْأَوْرَاقَ.  
 لَمَّا رَأَى الدَّبٌ أَنَّهُ يَحْدُو بِهَا الشَّرْطِ طَلَبَ  
 أَنْ تَكُونَ حِصْنَهُ فِي الْعَنْتَةِ الْأَتَالِيَّةِ مَا يَحْتَ  
 أَنْثَرِيَّةٍ وَحِصْنَةٍ شَرِيكَهَا مَا فَوْقَهَا.  
 قَوْاقِهِ الْفَلَاحِ بِدَلَكِ وَزَرَعَما الْأَرْضَ قَسْحاً.  
 وَلَكَا حَانَ وَقْتُ التَّقْسِيمِ أَخْذَ الْفَلَاحِ الْعَنْتَابِ  
 وَالْأَتَيْنِ وَتَرَكَ الدَّبِ الْجَذْدُورَ الَّتِي لَا قِيمَهُ  
 لَهَا. فَرَأَى الدَّبُ أَنَّهُ مَخْدُوعٌ فِي كُلِّ حَالٍ.  
 فَتَرَكَ الْمُشَرِّكَةَ.

## Vocabulary:

369. شاركَ "to enter into partnership with"

370. زَرْعٌ "sowing", "planting" 371. حَقْلٌ "field," 372. "field." 373. "to grow", "to sprout" (Imperf.)

374. زَرْبَةٌ "soil", "ground" 375. "above", "on" 376. "زَرْبَةٌ" "زَرْبَةٌ "above" 376. "above", "on" 375.  
 لَمَّا 377. "when the time of... came" 377. "division" 378. "مزدوج" (أَوْرَاقٌ : وَرْقٌ)  
 مَخْدُوعٌ "deceived" 379. "leaf" (plural: وَرْقٌ) 380. شَرْطٌ "condition" (plural: طَلَبٌ) 381. شُرْطٌ "share",

"to wish for"; "to desire" (Imperf.) 382. حَصْنَةٌ "share",  
 "portion" (إِصْلَبٌ) (fem., أَتَالِيَّةٌ) 383. "the next" (أَتَالِيَّةٌ) 384. "to agree" 385. سِنَابَلٌ "ear of corn" (plural: جُبْدُورٌ) 386. "wheat" 387. سِنَابَلٌ (سِنَابَلٌ : "value"; "worth"; price" 388. قِيمَةٌ "value"; "condition".

## Forty-sixth Lesson

سلَمٌ قَبْرٌ "Ahmad is poor"	سَلَمٌ قَبْرٌ "Salim is poor"
بَيْتٌ سَلَمٌ "the house of Ahmad"	بَيْتٌ سَلَمٌ "the house of Salim"
رَأَيْتُ سَلَمًا "I saw Ahmad"	رَأَيْتُ سَلَمًا "I saw Salim"
في الْكِتَابِ "in the schools"	في الْكِتَابِ "in the books"

(1) There are nouns and adjectives with no Tanwin at the end

مَدَارِسٌ "black"; أَسْوَدٌ "lazy"; كَسْلَانٌ "schools"; دَفَائِرٌ "copy-books" etc.

e. g. "Ahmad" في المُهَاجِرَةِ في قَاهِيجَيْنِ صَعِيرَةٍ وَمَا

أَشْتَرِيتَ فِي الْمَكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ - إِشْتَرِيتُ هَذَا جَرَائِيدَ وَدَفَائِرَ وَكُتُبًا وَقَدْ دَخَلَ سَارِقٌ عُرْفَةَ

الْبَارِحَةِ وَكَتَبَتْ الْيَوْمَ بِكُبْرٍ أَرْزَقَ وَأَخْتَرَ

كَتَبَتْ بِكُبْرٍ أَجْزَرَ وَكَانَ أَخْيَرِي فِي مُحْكَمَةٍ

أَنْصَلَ وَرَأَى هَذَا الْمَحَايِي الَّذِي كَانَ أَبْسَارَ

فِي كَرْمٍ جَدِيدِهِ وَمِنْ رَأَى بَيْتِي بِالْجَدِيدِ - إِيمَيْ

رَأَيْتُهُ الْبَارِحَ 8. قَالَ أَبُوكَ إِنَّهُ يَنْتَظِرُكَ فِي

مُحْكَمَةِ الْصَّالِحِ وَإِنْتَظَرَكَ الْمُنْتَبِطَ قَبْلَ الظَّهَرِ

فِي دَكَانِهِ الَّذِي فِي حَارَةِ الْمَسَايِّرِ 9. أَيْنَ الْجَنَّةُ

الَّتِي أَشْرَيْتَهَا فِي الْأَسْوَفِ؟ - هَيْ فِي الْمَطْبَحِ

11. إِشْتَرِيتُ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْأَسْوَفِ تَفَاجَرًا وَعِنْبًا وَجَوْزًا

12. هَذِهِ الْتَّفَاجِرَةُ حَامِضَةٌ وَتَلَقَّ أَشْفَاقَهُ حُلُوةٌ

13. هَذِهِ الْجَوْزَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْجَوْزَةِ

وَهُمْ شُرِبُوا قَهْوَةً فِي قَاهِيجَيْنِ صَعِيرَةٍ وَمَا

أَشْتَرِيتَ فِي الْمَكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ - إِشْتَرِيتُ هَذَا

جَرَائِيدَ وَدَفَائِرَ وَكُتُبًا وَقَدْ دَخَلَ سَارِقٌ عُرْفَةَ

الْبَارِحَةِ وَكَتَبَتْ الْيَوْمَ بِكُبْرٍ أَرْزَقَ وَأَخْتَرَ

كَتَبَتْ بِكُبْرٍ أَجْزَرَ وَكَانَ أَخْيَرِي فِي مُحْكَمَةٍ

أَنْصَلَ وَرَأَى هَذَا الْمَحَايِي الَّذِي كَانَ أَبْسَارَ

فِي كَرْمٍ جَدِيدِهِ وَمِنْ رَأَى بَيْتِي بِالْجَدِيدِ - إِيمَيْ

رَأَيْتُهُ الْبَارِحَ 8. قَالَ أَبُوكَ إِنَّهُ يَنْتَظِرُكَ فِي

مُحْكَمَةِ الْصَّالِحِ وَإِنْتَظَرَكَ الْمُنْتَبِطَ قَبْلَ الظَّهَرِ

فِي دَكَانِهِ الَّذِي فِي حَارَةِ الْمَسَايِّرِ 9. أَيْنَ الْجَنَّةُ

الَّتِي أَشْرَيْتَهَا فِي الْأَسْوَفِ؟ - هَيْ فِي الْمَطْبَحِ

11. إِشْتَرِيتُ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْأَسْوَفِ تَفَاجَرًا وَعِنْبًا وَجَوْزًا

12. هَذِهِ الْتَّفَاجِرَةُ حَامِضَةٌ وَتَلَقَّ أَشْفَاقَهُ حُلُوةٌ

13. هَذِهِ الْجَوْزَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْجَوْزَةِ

- a. (u) in the Nominate e.g. "Ahmad" في الدِّيْنَانِ "in a white house"; "in new schools"; رَأَيْتُ مَدَارِسَ جَدِيدَةَ "saw Ahmad"; رَأَيْتُ مَدَارِسَ جَدِيدَةَ "saw Ahmad".
- b. - (a) in both the Genitive and the Accusative e.g. بَيْتٌ "house"; مَدَارِسٌ "schools"; مَدَارِسٌ "black"; أَسْوَدٌ "lazy"; كَسْلَانٌ "schools"; دَفَائِرٌ "copy-books" etc.
- These Tanwin-less nouns and adjectives have two case-endings only:
- (2) When the Tanwin-less nouns and adjectives are made definite by the Article or by a possessive suffix or by a following Genitive, then they have three case-endings e.g. "these schools are new".
- b. "the teachers of the schools" في دَكَانِهِ الَّذِي فِي حَارَةِ الْمَسَايِّرِ 9. أَيْنَ الْجَنَّةُ الَّتِي أَشْرَيْتَهَا فِي الْأَسْوَفِ؟ - هَيْ فِي الْمَطْبَحِ
- "in the schools of the city" في دَكَانِهَا "in her copy-books"
- "the teachers of the schools" رَأَيْتُ الْمَدَارِسَ 10. ما عَلَى الْمَدَارِسِ - عَلَى الْمَدَارِسِ كُتُبٌ وَدَفَائِرٌ
- "in the schools of the city" في دَكَانِهَا "in her copy-books"
- "the teachers of the schools" رَأَيْتُ الْمَدَارِسَ 11. إِشْتَرِيتُ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْأَسْوَفِ تَفَاجَرًا وَعِنْبًا وَجَوْزًا
- "in the schools of the city" في دَكَانِهَا "in her copy-books"
- "the teachers of the schools" رَأَيْتُ الْمَدَارِسَ 12. هَذِهِ الْتَّفَاجِرَةُ حَامِضَةٌ وَتَلَقَّ أَشْفَاقَهُ حُلُوةٌ
- "in the schools of the city" في دَكَانِهَا "in her copy-books"
- "the teachers of the schools" رَأَيْتُ الْمَدَارِسَ 13. هَذِهِ الْجَوْزَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْجَوْزَةِ

**Vocabulary:** 390. سارق "thief" 391. اهـ سـرقـ "to steal" (imperfect: سـاعـةـ "hour" and also: "watch";

392. (يسـقـ "court of justice" (plural: مـكـمـةـ "court of justice" وـلـكـمـ "reconciliation" (صـلحـ "peace", "reconciliation" 395. محـامـ "advocate", "barrister" 396. رـأـتـ "she saw" (الـحـاـميـ "the advocate") رـأـتـ (الـحـاـميـ "she saw" (الـحـاـميـ رـأـتـ)

397. إـنـتـظـرـ "to expect", "to wait for" ( Imperf.: جـبـيـةـ "a piece of cheese" (see below Note) 398. (يـتـظـلـ "to expect", "to wait for" 399. عـنـتـ "apples" 400. يـفـاحـ "grapes" 402. حـلوـ "sour" 403. حـامـضـ "sweet".

**Note:** Many nouns which denote plants or materials have two singular forms:

1. A form without ةـ in the end. This form denotes the plant or the material generally. For example: إـلـخـانـ (الـخـانـ) "the apple is a fruit", جـبـيـةـ "cheese is produced from milk".
2. A form with ةـ in the end. This form indicates a single object

The nouns in this singular form are to be translated sometimes as if they were plurals e. g. مـرـ بـهـاـ رـجـلـ فـالـتـ لـهـ «نـهـارـكـ سـعـيدـ يـاـ أـخـيـ» وـكـاتـتـ خـرـجـ إـلـىـ الـبـسـتـانـ بـعـدـ الـظـاهـرـ وـتـنـظـيـرـ صـاحـبـاـ إـلـىـ

أنـ رـجـعـ مـنـ وـكـانـيـهـ. وـكـماـ رـأـيـهـ كـاتـتـ تـقـولـ: يـاـ

of the named plant or a piece of the named material e. g. "I have an apple and he has an apple",

هـذـهـ الـجـبـيـةـ أـكـبـرـ مـنـ يـلـكـ الـجـبـيـةـ وـلـكـمـ يـشـاكـهـ "Two apples", "two pieces of cheese" is to be translated: يـمـاـخـتانـ ، جـبـيـتـانـ .

**Translate:** 1. This clock is bigger than the clock which thy (masc.) brother bought in Jerusalem 2. Where is the (piece of) cheese which I put on the table? — It is on the table in the kitchen 3. This apple is sour. It is sourer than that apple 4. Who has seen to-day the director of this school? — I have seen him to-day 5. This new house is smaller than the old house of the uncle (on the father's side) 6. What did thy (masc.) brother buy in the new shop? — He bought there books and copy-books 7. The houses in this village are bigger than the houses of that village 8. I have a white dog and a black dog. The white dog is fatter than the black dog 9. Who has seen Ahmad to-day? — My mother has seen him in the new market 10. Ibrahim is bigger than Ahmad and Ahmad is bigger than Salim 11. My father was yesterday in the field of Ibrahim.

## Forty-seventh Lesson

### الـبـغـاءـ

كـلـ لـرـجـلـ يـبـغـيـهـ يـعـرفـ الـكـلامـ قـلـداـ

مـرـ بـهـاـ رـجـلـ فـالـتـ لـهـ «نـهـارـكـ سـعـيدـ يـاـ أـخـيـ» وـكـاتـتـ إـسـترـيـتـ فـيـ الـسـوقـ يـمـاسـاـ وـعـنـبـاـ وـجـوـزـاـ خـرـجـ إـلـىـ الـبـسـتـانـ بـعـدـ الـظـاهـرـ وـتـنـظـيـرـ صـاحـبـاـ إـلـىـ

## Forty-eighth Lesson

### A

عَمِيْ خَذِنِي إِلَى الْبَيْتِ . فَضَاعَتِ الْبَيْعَاءُ يَوْمًا .  
 فَكَانَ صَاحِبَهَا يَسْنَالُ كُلَّ أَنْاسٍ عَنْهَا قَالَ لَهُ أَخْدَمُ  
 أَرْجَالَ : إِنِّي سَمِعْتُ صَوْتَ بَيْعَاءَ فِي بَيْتِ جَارِيِ .  
 قَدَهَبَ صَاحِبُ الْبَيْعَاءِ إِلَى جَارِ ذَلِكَ الْأَرْجَلِ  
 وَسَأَلَهُ عَنِ الْبَيْعَاءِ . فَلَمَّا سَمِعَتْ صَوْتَ صَاحِبِهَا  
 قَالَتْ «يَا عَمِيْ خَذِنِي إِلَى الْبَيْتِ» . فَدَخَلَ أَرْجَلِ  
 وَأَخْذَهَا مِنْ بَيْتِ أَسَارِيِ .

الْسَّعَلَةُ : مَا كَانَتِ الْمَنْعَاءُ تَقْوِيلُ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ إِلَيْهِ  
 كَانَ يَسْرُهُ بِهِمْ لِكَذَا كَانَتْ تَخْرُجُ إِلَى الْبَيْتَانِ ; كَانَ  
 رَأَتْ صَاحِبَهَا يَرْجِعُ مِنْ دَكَانِهِ مَا قَاتَ لَهُ كَما  
 ضَاعَتِ الْبَيْعَاءُ مَا فَعَلَ صَاحِبُهَا مَا قَاتَ لَهُ أَخْدَمُ أَرْجَالِهِ .

**Vocabulary:**

- 404. بَيْعَاءُ "parrot", "popinjay".
- 405. مَرَّ يَلَّكَ "مر" in "مر في" "مر بالبيت" (to pass).
- 406. سَعِيدٌ "fortunate", "lucky".
- 407. مَهَارٌ "day", "daytime".
- 408. ضَاعَ "lost".
- 409. نَاسٌ "is plural of انسان".
- 410. عنْ "for", "about", "from".

- (1) A personal suffix added to a noun denotes the property of the noun to the person which the pronominal suffix referred to, e.g. "his house"; "her house". These personal suffixes are therefore called **Possessive Pronouns**. A possessive pronoun added to a noun defines it completely just as the article "ال" would do, for "his house" specifies a definite (particular) house. The nouns drop therefore the **Tanwin** (see above Lesson 23(3)) before the possessive pronouns e.g. "his house" "a house".
- (2) Feminine nouns ending in ة change this termination into ئت.

before the possessive pronouns e.g. "thy (masc.) school".

"school".

(3) Nouns to which the possessive pronouns are attached take the forms which they have before a genitive e.g.

"two houses of the baker". See above Lesson 32 C. (1)

"in thy (masc.) two houses" (and also: the بيتاً أخباراً

"in thy (masc.) two houses" (so also: في بيت

"in the two houses of Salīm". See above سليم)"

"in the two houses of Salīm". See above) في بيت

"I saw thy (masc.) two houses" (so also: سليم)"

"the teachers of Salīm". See above Lesson 37A.(3)

"I saw thy (masc.) teachers" (so also: معلمون ا سليم)"

"I saw thy (masc.) teachers" (so also: رأيت نس معلمون ا

"I saw the teachers of Salīm". See above) رأيت نس معلمون ا

"the house of Salīm". See above Lesson 25(1b). Note) في بيت سليم)"

"in thy (masc.) house" (so also: في بيت

"in the house of Salīm". في بيت

(1) When an adjective is added to a noun which has a possessive pronoun it is necessary to make the adjective definite e.g. بيتاتك ال الكبير "thy (masc.) big house".

The number of the possessor	The possessor	The nouns added by the possessive pronouns are as follows:
1 m.f.	بنت	في بيت
2 m.	بيتات	في بيتاتك
3 m.	بيتاتك	في بيتاتك
1 m.t.	بيتك	في بيتك
2 m.t.	بيتكا	في بيتكا
3 m.t.	بيتها	في بيتها
1 m.f.	بيتنا	في بيتنا
2 m.	بيتكن	في بيتكن
3 m.	بيتهن	في بيتهن
P1 or P2	بيتهن	في بيتهن

Note: For the first person there is no special Dual form.

## Forty-ninth Lesson

The pronominal suffix of the first person is **ي** when it follows a vowelless **ا** و ي For example:

بِيَتَيْهِيَ "my two houses"; مُعَلِّمَوْيَ "my teachers"

**Note:** في بيتي "in my two houses" instead of رأى معلمي "he saw my teachers" instead of رأى معلميه "he saw my teacher". The suffixes هـ، هـ، هـ، هـ are changed into هـ، هـ، هـ، هـ.

**ي** when they follow the vowel - (i), the (i) or  
the (ay) e. g. **فِي بَيْتِهِ** "in his house".

فِي بَيْتَيْهِ "in his two houses"; فِي بَيْتِهِ "in their (masc.) house"; رَأَيْتُ مُؤْمِنَةً "I saw his teachers" etc.

Note : The prepositions also take the pronominal suffixes as follows ,

أَعْلَى - عَلَيْكَ عَلَيْكَ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهَا etc.

أَشْيَاءُ النَّذِيرِ جَهَلَ الشَّيْءَ مِنَ الْمَاذَةِ - الْمُسْتَحِبُ جَهَلَ  
خَرْمَةَ حَطَبٍ مِنْ هَنَاكَ وَأَيْنَ الْكَشْبُ مِنْ الْجَدِيدَهُ  
الَّتِي أَشْتَرَتْهَا الْبَارِحَ - اخْدَهَا أَخْيَ الْكَبِيرُ  
عَالَمُ عَالَمُو وَعَالَمُوكَ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي حَارَهُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ  
الَّذِي بَيَاتُ جَارِنَا وَبَيُونَهُ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْأَنَابَهُ الْفَرِيهَهُ

١. أبو أبي وأبو أمي  $\rightarrow$  أمي جدائي. أم أيق وأم أمي.

٢. هما جداتي وإنما خطفهم  $\rightarrow$  ما خرس  $\rightarrow$  جداته اليوم في مستانكم  $\rightarrow$  جدتي عرس اليوم  $\rightarrow$  مخلة في مستانها.

٣. سليم والده برجا من ملككم العرش ورجلاً إلى بيتهما الذي في المدينة القديمة  $\rightarrow$  سامي ووالدتهما كائنات اليوم في الجامس.

يُـيـ بـسـنـيـكـمـ؟ - جـدـيـ غـرـسـ الـيـوـمـ حـلـاـ فيـ بـسـانـاـ  
3. سـلـمـ وـوـالـدـهـ خـرـبـاـ مـنـ مـحـكـمـةـ الصـلـحـ وـرـجـمـاـ

١. أبو أبي وأبو أمي هما جدائي. أم أبي قام أمي  
هـما جدائي وانا حفيدهم ٢. ما ضرس جدك اليوم

من قریتنا ۱۲. این کتابای انجدیدان واین دو فرایدی - کتابای انجدیدان فی عرفی و دفترالا ایضا هنالک.

Vocabulary: 411. حَمَادٌ "grandson" (plural: حَمَادُونَ)

412. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "date palms" 413. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "غرس" 414. وَالد <sup>أَنْ</sup> "plant trees" 415. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "date palms" 416. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "the parents" 417. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "the parents" 418. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "brother" (plural: <sup>أَخْوَة</sup>) 419. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "sister" (plural: <sup>أَخْوَات</sup>) 420. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "vulture"; "eagle" (plural: <sup>فُلَاداً</sup>) 421. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "something"; "thing"; "shay'" 422. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "different"; various 423. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "to carry"; to bear" (Imperf: <sup>يَحْمِلُ</sup>) 424. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "an old man"; "chief"; "sheikh" (plural: <sup>شَيْخ</sup>) 425. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "package"; "bundle" (plural: <sup>حَطَب</sup>) 426. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> "fire-wood".

4. مَنْ يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> خَلَك؟ — هُوَ يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> بَعْدَ الظَّهَرِ  
8. مَنْ يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> خَلَك؟ — هُوَ يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> بَعْدَ الظَّهَرِ  
10. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> شَاءَ اللَّهُ وَمُعْلِمُوا الْيَوْمِ — مُعْلِمُي  
المُدْرَسَةِ 11. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بِيُونِتِهِ  
12. يَنْهَا <sup>أَنْ</sup> أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَبِيلَى.

Vocabulary: 427. كم <sup>أَنْ</sup> "how many?", "how much?"

Fiftieth Lesson

وَكُمْ مَرَّةً كَانَ أَجْوَلَ الْكَبِيرِ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَافَا وَ—  
وَكُمْ مَرَّةً كَانَ أَجْوَلَ الْكَبِيرِ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَافَا وَهَذَا  
الْكَبِيرُ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ مَرَّتِينْ هَنَالِكَ ٢. هَذَا

Vocabulary: 427. كم "how many?", "how much?" (The noun after كم is in the Accusative singular e. g. كم بيتاً "how many houses?" كم مرتاً "how many times?") 428. صياد "hunter" 429. صاد "to hunt" (Imperfect: يصيّد) 430. سlaughter (Imperfect: يُسلّط) 431. دائم "always" 432. بكى "to weep" (Imperfect: يبكي)

فَتَكَلَّ أَحَدُ الْمَصَافِيرِ لِصَاحِبِهِ: لَا تَخَفْ مِنْ هَذَا  
سَالَ 434. (مُوْمَعٌ "tear" plural: دَمْعٌ "tear" (plural: 433. يَبْكِي (يَبْكِي)  
مَسْدَدٌ 435. عَيْنٌ "eye" (يَسِيلٌ 436. يَرْجُلٌ "leg" (Imperfect: يَرْجُلٌ  
إِلَى دُمُوعِهِ بَلْ إِلَى مَا تَصْبِحُ يَدَاهُ.  
"to flow", "to run" (Imperfect: يَسِيلٌ 437. بَرْدٌ "cold", "coolness" 438. سَلْمٌ عَلَى "strength", "hardness" 439. زَارٌ "to visit" (Imperfect: يَزُورٌ  
"to salute", "to greet" 440. إِنْ "if" 441. شَاءَ "to will", "to wish", "to desire"  
"God willing").

Translate: 1. His two new books are in my small room  
2. Where are our two dogs? — they are in the room of our  
grand-father 3. How many books did thy father buy yester-  
day in the new shop? — My father bought yesterday two books  
4. How many hares did the hunter hunt yesterday in this forest?  
— he hunted yesterday two hares 5. His brother visited me  
yesterday and I shall visit him in the after-noon  
6. Where are my two copy-books? — Thy (masc.) brother has taken them  
7. Who has seen to-day the two asses of my grand-father?  
— The brother of our neighbour saw them 8. The teachers of  
the new school have to-day visited our teachers  
9. These two  
cows are fatter than our two cows 10. Our two horses are  
bigger than your (masc.) two horses 11. How many copy-  
books has thy (masc.) brother bought in the after-noon? — He  
has bought two copy-books 12. Our sister is bigger than your  
(masc.) sister and your sister is bigger than his sister.

الشَّوَّرْ مَرَّةً وَقَعَتْ يَبْنِيهِمْ وَبَيْنِ الْأَرَانِبِ  
حَرْبٌ فَدَهَبَتِ الْأَرَانِبُ إِلَى الشَّالَابِ وَطَلَّبُوا مِنْهُمْ  
أَنْ يُسَاعِدُوهُمْ فِي حَارِبَةِ الْأَسْوَرِي. فَقَاتُوا لَهُمْ: لَوْلَا  
عَرْفَانًا كَمْ لَوْلَا عَرْفَانًا الْأَسْوَرَ الَّذِينَ تَحْسَارُ بِوْهُمْ  
لَعْنَانًا ذَلِكَ.

Vocabulary: 442. بَارِدٌ "cold", "cool" 443. لَا تَخَفْ (Imperfect: يَبْكِي)  
تَظَرَّرٌ 444. يَأْتِي إِلَيْهِ "does he not see him?" 445. يَأْتِي إِلَيْهِ "does he not look at him?"  
يَأْتِي إِلَيْهِ "do not look at him!" 446. يَأْتِي إِلَيْهِ "but"  
"do not fear!" 447. يَأْتِي إِلَيْهِ "but" 448. يَصْنَعُ (Imperfect: يَصْنَعُ)  
"to see", "to look" 449. يَصْنَعُ (Imperfect: يَصْنَعُ) "to make" 450. يَسَاعِدُ "to help",  
"to assist" (Imperfect: يَسَاعِدُ) 451. مَعْكَةٌ "battle", "fight" 452. لَوْهُمْ "if not" (Imperfect: يَلْوَهُمْ)  
يَذْجِبُهَا وَالْمَوْعِيْ تَسِيلٌ مِنْ عَيْنِيهِ مِنْ شَدَّةِ الْبَرْدِ.

## Fifty-first Lesson

### صَيَادٌ - وَوْدٌ وَصَفَورٌ

كَانَ صَيَادٌ يَصِيدُ عَصَافِيرَ فِي يَوْمٍ بَارِدٍ. فَكَانَ

(Imperfect) لـ 454. لـ is a particle used for emphasis and it is omitted in translation e.g. "لـ فعلنا" ("truly) we have done it".

## Fifty-second Lesson

"a big dog"	كلب كبيـر
"a fat cow"	بقرة سميـنة
"his dog is bigger than my dog"(1)	كلبها أكـبر مـن كلـبـيـا
"his cow is fatter than her cow"	بـقرـتـهـا أثـنـيـن مـن بـقـرـتـهـا
"he is the biggest in this village"	هو ألاـكـبـر في هـذـه القرـيـة
"she is the biggest in this village"	هيـ الـكـبـرـىـ فـي هـذـه القرـيـة
"a red dog"	كلب أحـمـر
"a red cow"	بـقرـة حـمـرـاء
"dumb children"	أولاد حـرـس

(1) The comparative degree of the adjectives is always formed

on the pattern of لـ thus:

أكـبـرـاـن "fatter than"

أصـمـرـاـن "smaller than"

أطـوـلـاـن "longer than" etc.

The comparative form is the same for all genders and numbers e.g. كـلـبـيـاـن "my dog is bigger than her dog"; كـلـبـهـاـن "his two dogs are bigger than her two dogs".

(2) The comparative form is also used for the superlative. In this case it is always defined by the article e.g. هوـ ألاـكـبـرـاـن "he is the biggest", or by a following genitive e.g. "the biggest pupil (literally: "the biggest of the pupils")", or by a pronominal suffix e.g. هوـ أـكـبـرـمـهـمـ "he is the biggest of them".

The feminine of the superlative is always on the pattern of هيـ الـصـغـرـىـ e.g. هيـ أـكـبـرـىـ "she is the fattest"; هيـ أـكـبـرـىـ "she is the smallest".

(3) The adjectives denoting colours or bodily defects have, in the masculine, the same form as comparatives. For example: كـلـبـ أـحـمـرـاـن "a red dog"; وـلـدـ أـخـرـسـاـن "a dumb child".

The feminine of these adjectives has the form of حـرـسـاءـن "green tree" e.g. بـنـتـ حـرـسـاءـاـن "a dumb girl"; اـولـادـ حـرـسـاـن "dumb children".

and the plural of these has the form of حـرـسـاءـاـن e.g.

بـنـتـ حـرـسـاءـاـن "a green tree"; كـلـبـ حـرـسـاءـاـن "a dumb girl"; اـولـادـ حـرـسـاـن "dumb children".

Note: "a red cow" — بـقـرـة حـمـرـاءـاـن — بـقـرـة حـمـرـاءـاـن — "two red cows" — In the Dual the Hamza of the fem. sing. is changed into وـ

### Fifty-third Lesson

دِلْكَ الْكُرْسِيُّ ٤٦. ذِلْكَ الْكُرْسِيُّ هُوَ أَنْفَهُ مِنْ هَذَا  
الْكُرْسِيِّ ٤٧. لِي بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ وَلَا يُجِيَّبُ بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ.

هَذِهِ الْقَرِيَّةِ ٤٨. لِي بَيْتٌ تَانٌ حَمْرَاؤَانِ وَلَكَ بَقَرَتَانِ  
سَوْدَاؤَانِ وَذَبَحَ جَارِي الْيَوْمَ حَرْوَقَنِ وَزَعَ الْحَمْ  
بَعْجَانًا بَيْنَ قَفَرَاءِ هَذِهِ الْحَمَّارَةِ ٤٩. فَتَسَّتَّ بَعْجَانًا دُكَانَ

سَمَكَ فِي الْمَشْوِقِ الَّذِي فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ وَهُوَ لَا

مَأْوَلَادٌ بُخْرَسٌ وَأَوْلَادٌ طُرْشٌ ٥٠. بَخْرَارَتَنِ  
(دُرُوسٌ) مُؤْرَسٌ وَسَبِينٌ هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ وَالْأَسْمَنُ فِي قَرْبَتَانِ

بُورَكَبَرٌ وَسَبِينٌ هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ وَالْأَسْمَنُ فِي قَرْبَتَانِ  
جَأْخِي إِبْرِيْمٌ يَدْرِسُ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ ٥١. هُوَ

أَصْغَرُ الْمَلَامِيدِ فِيهَا ٥٢. لَا يُخْيِي الْكُبَيْرِ سَيَارَاتَانِ

كَبِيرَاتَانِ أَشْتَرَ أَهْمَاءِ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْمَاضِيَّةِ  
وَالْمَدِينَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ ٥٣. هُوَ الْأَكْتَابِ سَهْلَةٌ وَالْمَدِينَةِ  
ذَلِكَ الْأَكْتَابِ صَعْبَةٌ ٥٤. هُذِهِ الْمَدِينَةُ أَسْهَلُ مِنْ  
تَلَكَ الْمَدِينَةِ ٥٥. هَذِهِ الْكُرْسِيِّ تَقْبَلُ وَذَلِكَ  
الْكُرْسِيِّ خَفِيفٌ ٥٦. هَذَا الْكُرْسِيُّ أَقْلَلُ مِنْ

ذِلْكَ الْكُرْسِيِّ ٥٧. ذِلْكَ الْكُرْسِيِّ هُوَ أَنْفَهُ مِنْ هَذَا

الْكُرْسِيِّ ٥٨. لِي بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ وَلَا يُجِيَّبُ بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ.  
بَيْتٌ أَخْيَيْ أَجْدَهُ مِنْ بَيْتِي ٥٩. أَخْنَتَا جَارِيَ الْأَخْرَسَاؤَانِ

زَارَتَا الْيَوْمَ أَخْتِي الْكَبِيرَةِ ٦٠.

### Vocabulary:

يُوزِّعُ "distribute" (Imperfect: يُوزِّعُ عَلَى "to distribute") ٤٥٥. وَزَعَ

أَخْرَسُ "gratis" ٤٥٦. سَمَلَكُ "fish". ٤٥٧. بَعْجَانًا "dumb".

أَطْرَشُ "deaf" ٤٥٨. دُرُوسٌ "lesson" (plural: دروس) ٤٥٩. أَطْرَشُ

أَخْنَفُ "easy" ٤٦١. صَعْبٌ "difficult" ٤٦٢. سَهْلٌ "simple" ٤٦٣. أَخْنَفُ

أَجْدَهُ "is the comparative of light (in weight)" ٤٦٤. حَسْفَيْفُ "light"

جَدِيدٌ "new". جَدِيدٌ "new".

### Translate:

1. His two camels are bigger than our two camels. 2. Our horse is the biggest horse in this village. 3. My brother bought yesterday two white cows. 4. These two white cows are fat. 5. This pupil is lazy and that pupil is diligent. 6. I have red ink and she has blue ink. 7. Where did thy (masc.) friend buy the red ink? — He bought the red ink in the new shop. 8. The lessons to-day are difficult. 9. These lessons are easier than those lessons. 10. Who opened this big window? — The pupil of my brother opened it. 11. Where is the white cow which I bought yesterday? — The white cow is in the garden of thy (masc.) grandfather. 12. This table is heavy and that table is light. 13. That table is lighter than this table. 14. This table is heavier than this table.

## Fifty-fourth Lesson

### الدَّكَانُ الْجَدِيدُ

فَتَحَّرَّجَ رَجُلٌ دَكَانَ سَمَكٍ. وَعَلَقَ فِوقَ بَابِهِ لَوْسًا صَنِيْرًا كَتَبَ عَلَيْهِ: «هُنَا يَبْيَعُ السَّمَكُ». بَخْشَاءً أَحَدَ أَصْدِيقَهُ وَقَالَ لَهُ: يَلِدًا كَتَبَتْ عَلَى الْأَوْرَجِ الْكَلِمَةَ «هُنَا» أَلَا يَبْيَعُ السَّمَكُ إِلَّا فِي دُكَانِكِ؟ خَدَفَ صَاحِبُ الدَّكَانِ الْكَلِمَةَ «هُنَا». مُهْمَّ جَاءَ صَدِيقُ أَخْرَى فَقَالَ لِصَاحِبِ الدَّكَانِ: لَمَذَا كَتَبَتْ عَلَى الْأَوْرَجِ الْكَلِمَةَ «يَبْيَعُ» أَلَا يَبْيَعُ النَّاسُ أَنْذَكَ لَا يَبْيَعُ السَّمَكَ تَجَانًا. خَدَفَ الْكَلِمَةَ «يَبْيَعُ». ثُمَّ جَاءَ صَدِيقُ تَالِكَ وَقَالَ: لَمَذَا كَتَبَتْ الْكَلِمَةَ «سَمَك» أَلَا يَرَاهُ النَّاسُ وَلَا يَشْمُونَهُ. قَنَاعَ صَاحِبُ الدَّكَانِ الْأَوْرَجِ.

**Vocabulary:** 465. "to hang" 466. "board", "plate" 467. "word" 468. "is sold" 469. "to subtract" 470. "third" 471. "smell" 472. "remove", "to take away".

## Fifty-fifth Lesson

### الدَّكَانُ الْجَدِيدُ

A. The numerals too have each a masculine form and a feminine form as follows:

Arabic ciphers	Translation	Feminine numerals	Masculine numerals
1	one	واحِدَةً (أَحَدٌ)	واحِدٌ (أَحَدٌ)
2	two	إِثْنَانِ إِثْنَانٍ	إِثْنَانِ إِثْنَانٍ
3	three	إِثْنَانِ إِثْنَانِ إِثْنَانٍ	إِثْنَانِ إِثْنَانِ إِثْنَانٍ
4	four	أَرْبَعَةٌ أَرْبَعَةٌ	أَرْبَعَةٌ أَرْبَعَةٌ
5	five	أَحْمَسٌ أَحْمَسٌ	أَحْمَسٌ أَحْمَسٌ
6	six	سِتٌّ سِتٌّ	سِتٌّ سِتٌّ
7	seven	سِبْعَةٌ سِبْعَةٌ	سِبْعَةٌ سِبْعَةٌ
8	eight	ثَمَانٌ ثَمَانٌ	ثَمَانٌ ثَمَانٌ
9	nine	تِسْعَةٌ تِسْعَةٌ	تِسْعَةٌ تِسْعَةٌ
10	ten	عَشْرٌ عَشْرٌ	عَشْرٌ عَشْرٌ
11	eleven	إِحْدَى عَشَرَةَ إِثْنَا عَشَرَةَ	إِحْدَى عَشَرَةَ إِثْنَا عَشَرَةَ
12	twelve	إِثْنَانِ عَشَرَةَ إِثْنَانِ عَشَرَةَ	إِثْنَانِ عَشَرَةَ إِثْنَانِ عَشَرَةَ

Arabic ciphers	Translation	Feminine numerals	Masculine numerals
١٣	thirteen	ثلاث عشرة	ثلاث عشر
١٤	fourteen	أربعة عشرة	أربعة عشر
١٥	fifteen	خمس عشرة	خمس عشر
١٦	sixteen	سنت عشرة	سنت عشر
١٧	seventeen	سبعين عشرة	سبعين عشر
١٨	eighteen	ثمانين عشرة	ثمانين عشر
١٩	nineteen	تسعمائين عشرة	تسعمائين عشر
٢٠	twenty	عشرون	عشرون
٣٠	thirty	ثلاثون	ثلاثون
٤٠	forty	أربعون	أربعون
٥٠	fifty	خمسون	خمسون
٦٠	sixty	ستون	ستون
٧٠	seventy	سبعون	سبعون
٨٠	eighty	ثمانين	ثمانين
٩٠	ninety	تسعمائين	تسعمائين
١٠٠	hundred	مائة (مئة)	مائة (مئة)

**A.** In the following examples, note how the tens and units are connected by وَ (and), and how the units are formed by adding the suffixات (ending) to the unit nouns:

- ١. **الفَمِائِيَّةُ** (fem.): ٢٠٠ (٢٠٠) ٣٠٠ (٣٠٠) ٤٠٠ (٤٠٠) ٥٠٠ (٥٠٠) ٦٠٠ (٦٠٠) ٧٠٠ (٧٠٠) ٨٠٠ (٨٠٠) ٩٠٠ (٩٠٠) ١٠٠٠ (١٠٠٠) ١١٠٠ (١١٠٠) ١٢٠٠ (١٢٠٠) ١٣٠٠ (١٣٠٠) ١٤٠٠ (١٤٠٠) ١٥٠٠ (١٥٠٠) ١٦٠٠ (١٦٠٠) ١٧٠٠ (١٧٠٠) ١٨٠٠ (١٨٠٠) ١٩٠٠ (١٩٠٠) ٢٠٠٠ (٢٠٠٠) ٢١٠٠ (٢١٠٠) ٢٢٠٠ (٢٢٠٠) ٢٣٠٠ (٢٣٠٠) ٢٤٠٠ (٢٤٠٠) ٢٥٠٠ (٢٥٠٠) ٢٦٠٠ (٢٦٠٠) ٢٧٠٠ (٢٧٠٠) ٢٨٠٠ (٢٨٠٠) ٢٩٠٠ (٢٩٠٠) ٢٠٠٠٠ (٢٠٠٠٠) ٣٠٠٠٠ (٣٠٠٠٠) ٤٠٠٠٠ (٤٠٠٠٠) ٥٠٠٠٠ (٥٠٠٠٠) ٦٠٠٠٠ (٦٠٠٠٠) ٧٠٠٠٠ (٧٠٠٠٠) ٨٠٠٠٠ (٨٠٠٠٠) ٩٠٠٠٠ (٩٠٠٠٠) ١٠٠٠٠٠ (١٠٠٠٠٠) ١١٠٠٠٠ (١١٠٠٠٠) ١٢٠٠٠٠ (١٢٠٠٠٠) ١٣٠٠٠٠ (١٣٠٠٠٠) ١٤٠٠٠٠ (١٤٠٠٠٠) ١٥٠٠٠٠ (١٥٠٠٠٠) ١٦٠٠٠٠ (١٦٠٠٠٠) ١٧٠٠٠٠ (١٧٠٠٠٠) ١٨٠٠٠٠ (١٨٠٠٠٠) ١٩٠٠٠٠ (١٩٠٠٠٠) ٢٠٠٠٠٠ (٢٠٠٠٠٠) ٢١٠٠٠٠ (٢١٠٠٠٠) ٢٢٠٠٠٠ (٢٢٠٠٠٠) ٢٣٠٠٠٠ (٢٣٠٠٠٠) ٢٤٠٠٠٠ (٢٤٠٠٠٠) ٢٥٠٠٠٠ (٢٥٠٠٠٠) ٢٦٠٠٠٠ (٢٦٠٠٠٠) ٢٧٠٠٠٠ (٢٧٠٠٠٠) ٢٨٠٠٠٠ (٢٨٠٠٠٠) ٢٩٠٠٠٠ (٢٩٠٠٠٠) ٢٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٢٠٠٠٠٠٠) ٣٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٣٠٠٠٠٠٠) ٤٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٤٠٠٠٠٠٠) ٥٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٥٠٠٠٠٠٠) ٦٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٦٠٠٠٠٠٠) ٧٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٧٠٠٠٠٠٠) ٨٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٨٠٠٠٠٠٠) ٩٠٠٠٠٠٠ (٩٠٠٠٠٠٠) ١٠٠٠٠٠٠٠ (١٠٠٠٠٠٠٠)
- B.** In compound numbers from 21 to 99 the units are put before the tens and are connected by وَ ("and"), the units having each a masculine or a feminine form e.g.

In compound numbers of thousands, hundreds, tens and units the largest number is put first, but the units are put before the tens e. g.

١٢٣٢ (١٢٣) ألف و مائتان و ثلاثة و عشرون  
٢٥٣٤ (٢٥٣٤) ألفان و خمسة و الأربعين  
١٥٤٧٦ (١٥٤٧٦) سبعة عشر ألفاً وأربعين و سبعين

C. (1) The numeral 1 follows the noun e. g.  
اللّاتِي وَأَرْبَعُونَ بَرَّهَةً "43 cows";  
٢٠٥٣٤ (٢٠٥٣٤) مُسْمَاءَةً سَنَةً "100 years";  
١٥٤٧٦ (١٥٤٧٦) سَنَةً عَشَرَةً "11 years";  
اللّاتِي كِتَابٌ "one book";

The numeral 1 follows the noun e. g.  
اللّاتِي وَاحِدَةً "one cow" (fem.).

The numeral 1 "one," (fem.) is used only before a plural in genitive and is to be translated "one of the..." e. g.  
اللّاتِي إِنْسَانٍ "one of the men",  
اللّاتِي أَرْجَالٍ "one of the women".

(2) The numeral 1 "one" is used only without a noun e. g.  
كَمْ جَمَارًا لَهُ كَمْ هَمَا ؟ لَهُ إِنْسانٌ وَهَا اللّاتِي  
"how many asses has he and how many has she ? — he has two and she has three".

اللّاتِي "two" (fem. is not used with a noun because the Dual of the noun itself denotes the number "two" e. g. "two asses"; "two cows".

D. The numerals 11–19 are indeclinable e. g.  
في أحد عشر كتاباً "in 11 books";  
١١ كِتَابٌ "read 11 books".

Exception: (إِنْسَنا عَشْرَةً) (fem. which is

in the Gen. and in the Acc.  
إِنْسَني عَشَرَةً عَشْرَةً (fem.).

The other numerals are declinable e. g.  
في خمسة كتب "in five books";  
قرأت قراءت خمسة كتب "I read 5 books";  
أربعة كلام كلام كلام كلام "four dogs";  
خمسة معلمين معلمين معلمين معلمين "five teachers" etc.

(1) The numerals 11–19 are followed by the noun in the Accus. Sing. e. g. "11 asses";

ثلاثة حماراً "11 cows";

ثلاثة وأربعون برهةً "43 books";

"43 cows".

(2) The numerals 100, 1000 are followed by the noun in the Gen. Sing. e. g. "100 years";

"100 years";

اللّاتِي مائةٌ سَنَةً "1000 books";

"2000 books".

اللّاتِي مائةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ كِتاباً "120 books";

"105 books".

اللّاتِي مائةٌ وَخَمْسَةٌ كِتابٌ "500 books";

"2000 books".

and 20 hours.

قرأت مائتين وخمسة كتب  
read 205 books

## Fifty-sixth Lesson

١. لا ينجزي المكابير سبأرثان كـ<sup>بر</sup>ثـان إـحـدـاهـا  
مسـتـارـه رـوكـلـ وـالـأـخـرـي سـيـارـه شـخـنـ دـيـ الأـسـبـوعـ  
سـعـبـهـ إـيـامـ وـهـيـ: يـوـمـ الـأـحـدـ وـيـوـمـ الـإـلـاـتـيـنـ وـيـوـمـ  
الـشـلـائـهـ وـيـوـمـ الـأـرـبـاعـهـ وـيـوـمـ الـخـمـيسـ وـيـوـمـ جـمـعـهـ  
وـيـوـمـ الـسـبـتـ ٣ـ فـيـ الـيـوـمـ أـرـبـعـهـ عـشـرـ وـسـاعـهـ  
وـفـيـ السـاعـهـ سـبـوـنـ دـقـيقـهـ وـفـيـ نـصـفـ الـسـاعـهـ كـلـاـيـونـ  
دـقـيقـهـ وـفـيـ زـيـنـ الـسـاعـهـ خـمـسـ عـشـرـ دـقـيقـهـ وـفـيـ  
يـوـلـيـتـ الـسـاعـهـ عـشـرـ وـدـقـيقـهـ. اـمـاـ الـدـقـيقـهـ قـيـدـهـ  
سـبـوـنـ هـاـيـهـ ٤ـ فـيـ كـلـ جـيـدـهـ فـلـسـطـيـنـ مـائـهـ غـزـينـ  
وـفـيـ كـلـ غـزـينـ عـشـرـ مـلاـتـ وـيـكـمـ اـشـتـريـتـ الـيـوـمـ  
لـهـاـجـاـ وـيـكـمـ اـشـتـريـتـ عـنـاـبـ وـإـشـتـريـتـ الـيـوـمـ  
يـسـبـعـهـ غـرـوـشـ وـعـنـاـ بـلـاهـ عـشـرـ غـرـشـ ٦ـ يـكـمـ ٥ـ

### Vocabulary:



مَلَاتٌ وَالْآخِرُ أَشْتَرِيتُ بِعُسْرِيْنِ مِلاً وَإِبْنُ كَمْ  
أَبْنَتْ (أو: كَمْرُوكَ كَمْ سَنَة) - إِنَّا أَبْنَى نَحْنُنَّ  
عَشْرَةَ سَنَةَ (أو: عُمْرِيْ خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ سَنَةَ) ٨ أَنَا أَبْنَى

"half" 485.	"لُبْتٌ" <sup>لُبْتٌ</sup>	"لَبْنَيَّةٌ" <sup>لَبْنَيَّةٌ</sup>	"لَبْنَيَّةٌ" <sup>لَبْنَيَّةٌ</sup>
"quarter" 486.	$\frac{1}{3}$	"ثُلْثٌ" <sup>ثُلْثٌ</sup>	"رِبْعٌ" <sup>رِبْعٌ</sup>
"second" 487.	"ثَانِيَّةٌ" <sup>ثَانِيَّةٌ</sup>	"ثَانِيَّةٌ" <sup>ثَانِيَّةٌ</sup>	"ثَانِيَّةٌ" <sup>ثَانِيَّةٌ</sup>
"piastres" 488.	"غِرْشٌ" <sup>غِرْشٌ</sup>	"جِنْيَهٌ" <sup>جِنْيَهٌ</sup>	"جِنْيَهٌ" <sup>جِنْيَهٌ</sup>
"pound" 489.	"مِيلَتٌ" <sup>مِيلَتٌ</sup>	"مِيلَتٌ" <sup>مِيلَتٌ</sup>	"مِيلَتٌ" <sup>مِيلَتٌ</sup>
"mil" 490.	"مَلَكَاتٌ" <sup>مَلَكَاتٌ</sup>	"مَلَكَاتٌ" <sup>مَلَكَاتٌ</sup>	"مَلَكَاتٌ" <sup>مَلَكَاتٌ</sup>
"plast" 491.	"مَلَكَاتٌ" <sup>مَلَكَاتٌ</sup>	"مَلَكَاتٌ" <sup>مَلَكَاتٌ</sup>	"مَلَكَاتٌ" <sup>مَلَكَاتٌ</sup>

الْأَمْرَاءُ يَدْرُسُونَ الْمُرْبِيَّةَ فِي إِحدَى الْمُسَارِسِ  
الْمُسَايِّرَةِ ١٠. لِابْنِ أَنْتَا عَشْرَةَ بَصَرَةَ وَخَمْسَةَ بَجَالٍ.

Vocabulary: 494. مدرسة مسائية "evening school"

"عمره <sup>سنده</sup> <sub>or</sub> <sup>لهم</sup> <sub>أين</sub> هو" 492: "how old  
is he?" 493. "عمره <sup>سنده</sup> <sub>or</sub> سنتان" <sup>لهم</sup> <sub>أين</sub> هو  
"he is two years old".

١- في هذا الشارع خمسة وأربعون بيتاً وفي

**ذلك الشارع** سبعة وعشرين بيتاً ٢. **أين تعلمت**

اللغة العربية؟ — تعلمتم في مدرسة مسائية في  
هذه المدينة أربع مدارس مسائية لتعليم العمال  
القراءة والكتابة. هل يعرف هذا الفلاح  
والكتابية؟ لا لهذا الفلاح لا يعرف لا القراءة  
ولألكتابة هو أمي في أفراسيا أحمد ما كتب

عَلَى الْوَحْيِ هُوَ قَالَ الْمُعَلَّمُ لِتَلَمِيذهِ أَفَرَا يَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ مَا  
كَرَّبْتَ زَيْدَ عَلَى الْوَرْحَنِ هُوَ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ السَّائِيَّةِ  
بِسْتَهُ وَخَمْسُونَ تَلَمِيذًا هُوَ زَوْجَهُ جَارِنَا لَا يَعْرِفُ  
الْقِرَاءَةَ وَلَا الْكِتَابَ هِيَ اُمِّيَّهُ وَرَوْجَهُ هَذِهِ

## Fifty-seventh Lesson

الشبيخ والملك

رأى ملك بيبيجا واحداً يعبر بمنزلة. فقال له:  
إيّاهَا العصابة أتوكيل من يصرّ هذا التغافل

Translate: 1. How many pupils are there in this school ? — In this school there are ninety-four pupils 2. My grand-mother has three big dogs and my uncle (on the mother's side) has two dogs 3. In this book there are sixty lessons and in that book there are sixty-seven lessons 4. In this room there are four windows and in the room of my sister there are three windows 5. In the after-noon I bought five books in the new shop 6. How many books has thy (masc.) pupil ? — He has fourteen books 7. How old is the brother of our neighbour ? — he is nineteen years old 8. This peasant is illiterate and his wife too is illiterate 9. How many times was our neighbour in Jaffa ? — He was there twice or three times 10. I read this book twice and my sister read it once 11. In this village there are two evening schools.

## Fifty-eighth Lesson

### The Ordinal Numbers

Translation	Feminine	Masculine
the first	الأولى <sup>١٠٤</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٥</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٦</sup>	الأول <sup>١٠٤</sup> الثاني <sup>١٠٥</sup> الثالث <sup>١٠٦</sup>
the second	الرابعة <sup>١٠٧</sup> الخامسة <sup>١٠٨</sup> السادسة <sup>١٠٩</sup>	الثانية <sup>١٠٧</sup> الخامس <sup>١٠٨</sup> السابع <sup>١٠٩</sup>
the third	الخامسة <sup>١٠٧</sup> السادسة <sup>١٠٨</sup> السابع <sup>١٠٩</sup>	الثالث <sup>١٠٣</sup> الرابع <sup>١٠٤</sup> الخامس <sup>١٠٥</sup>
the fourth	السابع <sup>١٠١</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٢</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٣</sup>	الرابع <sup>١٠١</sup> الخامس <sup>١٠٢</sup> السادس <sup>١٠٣</sup>
the fifth	الثانية <sup>١٠٢</sup> الرابعة <sup>١٠٣</sup> الخامسة <sup>١٠٤</sup>	الخامس <sup>١٠٢</sup> السادس <sup>١٠٣</sup> السابع <sup>١٠٤</sup>
the sixth	الرابعة <sup>١٠٣</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٤</sup> الخامسة <sup>١٠٥</sup>	السادس <sup>١٠٣</sup> السابع <sup>١٠٤</sup> الثامن <sup>١٠٥</sup>
the seventh	الثالثة <sup>١٠٤</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٥</sup> الرابعة <sup>١٠٦</sup>	السادس <sup>١٠٤</sup> السابع <sup>١٠٥</sup> الثامن <sup>١٠٦</sup>
the eighth	الرابعة <sup>١٠٥</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٦</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٧</sup>	السبعين <sup>١٠٧</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٨</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٩</sup>
the ninth	الرابعة <sup>١٠٦</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٧</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٨</sup>	الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٦</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٧</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٨</sup>
the tenth	الرابعة <sup>١٠٧</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٨</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٩</sup>	الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٧</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٨</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٩</sup>
the eleventh	الرابعة <sup>١٠٨</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٩</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠١</sup>	الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٨</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٩</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠١</sup>
the twelfth	الرابعة <sup>١٠٩</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠١</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٢</sup>	الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٩</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠١</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٢</sup>
the thirteenth	الرابعة <sup>١٠١</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٢</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٣</sup>	الحادي عشر <sup>١٠١</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٢</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٣</sup>
the fourteenth	الرابعة <sup>١٠٢</sup> الثالثة <sup>١٠٣</sup> الثانية <sup>١٠٤</sup>	الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٢</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٣</sup> الحادي عشر <sup>١٠٤</sup>
etc.	etc.	etc.

وَهُوَ لَا يُشِيرُ إِلَّا بَعْدَ سَبْعِينَ كَمِيرَةً .

فَقَالَ الشَّيْخُ: أَغْرِسْ النَّخْلَ لِيَكُلَّ أَخْفَادِي  
مِنْ تَمَرٍ كَمَا أَكَلْتُ أَنَا مِمَّا غَرَسْ جَدِيدِي .

فَأَسْهَسَنَ الْمَلِكُ ذَلِكَ وَاعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا .

فَأَخَذَهَا الشَّيْخُ وَقَالَ: إِيَّاهَا الْمَلِكُ لَقَدْ أَكَلْتُ  
مِنْ كَلَامِي وَاعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا أُخْرَى؛

فَأَخَذَهَا وَقَالَ: إِيَّاهَا الْمَلِكُ وَاعْجَبْ مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ  
أَنَّ النَّخْلَ قَدْ أَتَمَّ الْمُسْنَةَ مِنْهُينَ . فَتَعَجَّبَ الْمَلِكُ مِنْ  
كَلَامِي وَاعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا أُخْرَى .

### Vocabulary

- "to hope" (Imperf.) 504. أَيْمَأ<sup>١</sup> أَيْمَأ<sup>٢</sup>  
 "to hear" 505. أَمْسَر<sup>١</sup> أَمْسَر<sup>٢</sup>  
 "fruit" 506. فُرُوت<sup>١</sup> فُرُوت<sup>٢</sup>  
 "fruit", "to produce fruit" (Imperfect) 507. فُرُوت<sup>١</sup> فُرُوت<sup>٢</sup>  
 "Kama" 508. كَمَا<sup>١</sup> كَمَا<sup>٢</sup> "as", "just as"  
 "Dinar" 509. دِينَار<sup>١</sup> دِينَار<sup>٢</sup> دِينَار<sup>٣</sup>  
 "to appreciate" 510. أَسْتَحْسِنَ<sup>١</sup> أَسْتَحْسِنَ<sup>٢</sup> أَسْتَحْسِنَ<sup>٣</sup>  
 "wonderful" 511. نَفْسِي<sup>١</sup> نَفْسِي<sup>٢</sup> نَفْسِي<sup>٣</sup>  
 "to wonder at" 513. عَجِيب<sup>١</sup> عَجِيب<sup>٢</sup> عَجِيب<sup>٣</sup>

For the ordinals from 20 on the cardinal numbers are used e. g.

"the twentieth house", "the hundred and fourtieth house"

"البيت العاشر والأربعون"

"البيت المائة والثلاثين"

The compound ordinals of the tens and units are as follows:

Masculine

Feminine

الحادي والعشرون  
الحادي والعشرين  
الثاني والثلاثون  
الثالثة والخمسون  
الرابعة والخمسون  
الخامسة والستون  
السادسة والسبعين  
السابعة والثمانين  
الثانية والتسعين  
الحادي والتسعين  
الحادي والعشرين  
الحادي والعشرون

the 21<sup>st</sup>  
the 32<sup>nd</sup>  
the 54<sup>th</sup>  
etc.

The ordinals from 11–19 are indeclinable e. g.

"in the 11<sup>th</sup> house";  
"in the 13<sup>th</sup> school".

أَلْبَرْنُ الْأَوَّلِ مَاكَانَ وَجَسَّ وَعِشْرُونَ صَفَحَهُ وَفِي  
أَلْبَرْنُ الْثَّانِي تَلَاثَيْةً وَارِبَعَ وَسِتُّونَ صَفَحَهُ وَفِي  
أَلْبَرْنُ الشَّالِتِ مَدَنَانَ وَسِتَّ وَتَسَابُونَ صَفَحَهُ.

1. الرَّوْسُ الْعَشِيرُ فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ أَسْهَلَ مِنْ

الْدَّرْسِ الْسَّادِسِ عَشَرَ وَالْدَّرْسِ الْسَّالِتِ وَالْمَسْمُونَ  
أَصْبَعُ مِنْ الدَّرْسِ الْهَادِي عَشَرَ 2. حَرَثَ هَذَا  
الْفَلَاجَ حَقَّلَ الْيَوْمَ مِنْ السَّاعَةِ الْمَأْسَطِ صَبَاحًا  
سَكِينٍ. 521. (مَنَاجِلٌ) "sickle", "scythe" (plur.)  
"end" 520. "sickle", "scythe" (plur.)

523. "page", "part" جزءٌ (جزءٌ) 524. "knife" سكينٌ (skain).  
من يَنْ في كُلِّ يَوْمٍ الْكَرَةُ الْأَوَّلِ مِنْ السَّاعَةِ

### Vocabulary:

(نَحَرَتْ) "to plough" (impell.) 514. حَرَثَتْ 515. حَمَارَبَةٌ "society" 517. جَمِيعَةٌ 516. جَمِيعَةٌ "be created" 518. اِمْبَيْهٌ "illiterateness" 519. غَايَةٌ "object"; "combat", "oppose" 520. حَفَّلَ (حَفَّلَ) "sickle", "scythe" (plur.)

521. سَكِينٌ (سَكِينٌ) "knife" (skain). من يَنْ في كُلِّ يَوْمٍ الْكَرَةُ الْأَوَّلِ مِنْ السَّاعَةِ الْمَأْسَطِ صَبَاحًا  
إِلَى الْسَّاعَةِ الْهَادِي عَشَرَةً 3. أَخْيَ يَحْرُثُ حَفَّلَ

Translate: 1. The book of my brother is composed of two parts, in the first part there are three hundred and fifty-five pages and in the second part there are four hundred and thirty-nine pages. 2. I was yesterday in Jerusalem from eight o'clock in the morning until three o'clock afternoon. 3. The sixteenth lesson in this book is more difficult than the thirty-seventh lesson. 4. Where is the second part of this English book? — It is in my room on the table. 5. When has thy (masc.) brother written his Arabic lessons? — he wrote them from six to eight o'clock in the evening. 6. How many camels has your (masc.) grand-father? — Our grandfather has twenty-five camels. 7. Where is the third part of this book? — It is in the room of our sister. 8. What has thy (masc.) sister written in the after-noon? — She has written the sixteenth lesson. 9. This lesson is easier than the twenty-eighth lesson. 10. How many lessons are there in this book? — In this book there are fifty-seven lessons.

## Fifty-ninth Lesson

### حَارِبَةُ الْأَمْيَةِ

أَنْسَتَتْ جَعِيَّةَ فِي أَحَدِ الدِّيْنِ عَائِيَّةَ حَارِبَةَ الْأَمْيَةِ.  
فَهَبَتْ هَذِهِ الْجَمِيعَةُ مَدَارِسَ لِلْيَلَةِ فِي الْقُرْيَ  
وَالْمَدِينَ لِتَعْلِيمِ الْفَلَاحِيْنَ وَالْمَعَالِ الْقَرَاءَةَ وَالْكِتَابَةَ.  
فَأَرْسَلَتْ هَذِهِ الْجَمِيعَةُ يَوْمًا مُفْتَشَا إِلَى إِحدَى  
الْأَرْبَلِ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى وَقَالَ «يُورٌ». قَفَّامَتْ زَوْجَتِهِ  
وَقَالَتْ: زَوْجِي يَسْعِنُ الْقِرَاءَةَ وَلَكِنَّهُ فِي حَاجَةٍ  
شَدِيدَةٍ إِلَى يُورٍ يَحْرُثُ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ.

Vocabulary: 525. "to send" (imper. <sup>plur.</sup>) 526. "present" (هَدَى) 527. "present" (هَدِيَّة) 528. "encouragement" 529. "to be gathered"; "to assemble" 530. "about"; "round" 531. "to call", "to invite" 532. "to do (something)" 533. "speed", "haste", "well" (imperfect: يَحْسَنُ)

حَوْلَهُ فَدَعَا الْمُفْتَشَنَ اُمْرَاهَ مِنْهُ وَطَلَبَ مِنْهَا أَنْ جَسِيدٌ (انْظُرْ): 534. "to look" (imperative: نَظَرَ) 535. "rapidly" (انْظُرْ): 536. "stand up" (to stand up): 537. "rise" (to rise): 538. "need".

فَقَرَأَتْ بِصُورَتِ عَالٍ "منْدِيل" قَتَالَ لِيَا: أَنْسَتْ  
وَاعْطَاهَا مِنْدِيلًا. يَمْ دَهَا رَجَلًا: قَفَرَا بِسَرَّهَةَ «مِنْجَل».  
قَتَالَ الْمُفْتَشَنَ: أَنْسَتْ وَاعْطَاهَهُ مِنْجَلًا.

يَمْ دَعَا أَخَرَ وَكَلَبَ مِنْهُ أَنْ يَئِرَا كَلْمَهَهُ أَشَارَ

إِلَيْهَا. قَفَرَا بِسَرَّهَةَ «يُورٌ» وَكَاتَتْ الْكَامِهَهُ شَعْلَا

أَخَرَ: قَتَالَ لَهُ الْمُفْتَشَنَ: أَنْظَرَ جَيْدَاهَا وَأَفْرَاهَا. فَنَظَرَ

## Sixtieth Lesson

### الرَّجُلُ وَالْمَوْتُ

رَجُلٌ مَرَّةً حَمَلَ حِزْمَةَ حَطَبٍ مِنَ الْفَابَةِ  
 الْقَرِيبَةِ إِلَى بَيْتِهِ. وَقَاتَنَ عَلَيْهِ. فَلَمَّا تَبَعَّدَ مِنْ  
 حَمْلِهِ رَأَى بَهَا عَنْ كَثْبِهِ وَدَعَا عَلَى نَفْسِهِ بِالْمَوْتِ.  
 قَسَّاصٌ لَهُ الْمَوْتُ وَقَالَ: هَا أَنَا ذَا لِكَذَا دَعْوَةَ يَقِينِي?  
 قَالَ لَهُ الرَّجُلُ دَعْوَتَكَ لِتُحَمِّلِي هَذِهِ حِزْمَةَ  
 الْحَطَبِ عَلَى كَثْبِي.

### VOCABULARY ENGLISH - ARABIC

- Vocabulary: 538. "شَدَلٌ" "to be heavy"  
 539. "مَوْتٌ" "death"  
 540. "حَمْلٌ" "carrying"  
 541. "مُوْرَى" "tired"  
 542. "حَمْلٌ" "carrying"  
 543. "كَشْفٌ" "shoulder"  
 544. "شَخْصٌ" "person"  
 545. "هَذَا" "see, I am here!"  
 546. "حَمْلٌ" "load"  
 547. "مُحَسِّلٌ" "(imperfect: "to load", "to charge")

Note 1: This vocabulary is only for the exercises in this book which are to be translated from English into Arabic.

Note 2: About the radical letters of the verbs see page 30, Notes 1-2.

Note 3: About the Imperfect see lesson 19.

Note 4: As to the broken plural see lesson 41.

q see lesson 23 (3)

after بعد

also إِضْنَانٌ

always دائِمًا

an see lesson 23 (3)

and وَ (see page 70, Note 2)

animal حيوان

plural: جِمِيلَاتٌ

to answer إِجَابَةٌ

- imperfect: يُسْبِبُ

apple تفاح (see page 112, Note 2)

Arabic عَرَبِيٌّ

A

- the Arabic language

are and art is

as for; as to أَمَّا

to ask سَأَلَ

- imperfect: يُسْأَلَ

to ask for طلَبَ

- imperfect: يُطَلَّبُ

ass حَمَارٌ

- plural: حَمَارِينَ

aunt عمَّةٌ (on the father's side)

uncle خَالٌ (on the mother's side)

B

- imperfect: يُكَوِّنُ

bear دَبَّ

- plural: دَبَّاتٍ

barber حَلاقٌ

- plural: حَلَاقُونَ

be كَانَ

- imperfect: يَكُونُ

أَكْبَرُ <sup>io</sup> beat ضرب	بِزْبَدَةٌ <sup>io</sup> butter زبدة
يَضْرِبُ <sup>io</sup> imperfect: عصافير bird عصفور	يَشْتَرِي <sup>io</sup> buy اشتري
جَمِيلٌ <sup>io</sup> beautiful جميل	إِخْرَاجٌ <sup>io</sup> and إِخْرَاجٌ إِخْرَاجٌ إِخْرَاجٌ
بِلَانٌ <sup>io</sup> because لأن	— plur. I bought إشتريت
لَا فِي <sup>io</sup> because he لآن في etc.	— plur. اشتريت
سَوْدَاءٌ <sup>io</sup> black أسود	— fem. سُورَاءٌ <sup>io</sup> black black
لَا هُوَ <sup>io</sup> etc. مسود	— plur. سُورَاءٌ <sup>io</sup> black black
فَبِلٌ <sup>io</sup> before قبل	الْمَهْنَادُونَ <sup>io</sup> blacksmiths حدادون
أَمَامٌ <sup>io</sup> (local) (local) قَدَامٌ (local)	— plur. حَدَّادُونَ — plur.
خَافَ <sup>io</sup> behind خاف	أَزْرَقٌ <sup>io</sup> blue أزرق
خَافَ <sup>io</sup> خاف	زَرْقاءٌ <sup>io</sup> — fem. زرقاء
أَنْجَارٌ <sup>io</sup> believe يُعْلَمُ	زَرْقاءٌ <sup>io</sup> — plur. زرقاء
أَنْجَارٌ <sup>io</sup> خاف	— plur. زرقاء
جَمَلٌ <sup>io</sup> carry تحمل	أَنْجَافٌ <sup>io</sup> — plural نظيف
جَمَلٌ <sup>io</sup> —	clean نظيف
جَمَلٌ <sup>io</sup> —	— cleaner نظيف
كِتَابٌ <sup>io</sup> book كتاب	سَاعَةٌ <sup>io</sup> clock ساعة
يَكْتُبُ <sup>io</sup> bench يُعْلَمُ	السَّاعَةُ الْثَالِثَةُ <sup>io</sup> three o'clock الساعة الثالثة
يَكْتُبُ <sup>io</sup> بِلَانٌ — plur.	— five o'clock الساعات الخمسة
وَلَدٌ <sup>io</sup> boy ولد	دِيكُوكٌ <sup>io</sup> cock ديكوك
أَوْلَادٌ <sup>io</sup> plural أَوْلَادٌ — plur.	دُرْوِلَكٌ <sup>io</sup> — plural درولك
خَيْرٌ <sup>io</sup> better than خير من better than	فَهْرَةٌ <sup>io</sup> coffee فهرة
بَيْنَ <sup>io</sup> between بين	رَخيْصٌ <sup>io</sup> cheap رخيص
سَكِينٌ <sup>io</sup> big سكين	أَرْخَصٌ <sup>io</sup> — cheaper أرخص
كَسْرٌ <sup>io</sup> break كسر	— come جاء

بَرْبَدَةٌ <sup>io</sup> cheese جبنة	C cheese جبنة (see page 112, Note)
وَلَدٌ <sup>io</sup> child ولد	أَوْلَادٌ <sup>io</sup> child أولاد
مَدِينَةٌ <sup>io</sup> city مدينة	— plural: مُدُنٌ مدن
جَمَلٌ <sup>io</sup> camel جمل	جَمَلٌ <sup>io</sup> camel جمل
مَحَاجَرٌ <sup>io</sup> carpenter مهاجر	مَحَاجَرٌ <sup>io</sup> carpenter مهاجر
جَمَلٌ <sup>io</sup> —	— plural: مُدُنٌ مدن
نَظِيفٌ <sup>io</sup> clean نظيف	نَظِيفٌ <sup>io</sup> clean نظيف
أَنْظَافٌ <sup>io</sup> —	— cleaner نظيف
سَاعَةٌ <sup>io</sup> clock ساعة	—
السَّاعَةُ الْثَالِثَةُ <sup>io</sup> three o'clock الساعة الثالثة	—
قَطْلُهُ <sup>io</sup> cat قطة	السَّاعَةُ الْأَنْتَلِسَةُ <sup>io</sup> five o'clock الساعة الخامسة
هِرْهُرٌ <sup>io</sup> cat هرمه	—
قَطْنَةٌ <sup>io</sup> she-cat قطة	دِيكُوكٌ <sup>io</sup> cock ديكوك
كُرْسِيٌّ <sup>io</sup> chair كرسى	دُرْوِلَكٌ <sup>io</sup> — plural درولك
كَرَاسِيٌّ <sup>io</sup> plural كراسى	فَهْرَةٌ <sup>io</sup> coffee فهرة
—	رَخيْصٌ <sup>io</sup> cheap رخيص
—	أَرْخَصٌ <sup>io</sup> — cheaper أرخص
جَاءَ <sup>io</sup> come جاء	—

— I came جئتُ	دَعَاهُ : — plural: دَعَاهُونَ
company شرکةٌ	شَرِكَةٌ : — plural: شَرِكَةً
cow بقرةٌ	بَقَرَةٌ : — plural: بَقَرَاتٍ
composed مُوَلَّفٌ	مُوَلَّفٌ : — plural: مُوَلَّفَاتٍ
copy-book دفترٌ	دَفْتَرٌ : — plural: دَفْتَرَاتٍ
cup فنجانٌ	فَنِيْجَانٌ : — plural: فَنِيْجَانَاتٍ
D	
daughter بنتٌ	بَنْتٌ : — and بنتٌ ابنتهٌ
plural: بناتٌ	بَنَاتٌ :
day يَوْمٌ	يَوْمٌ :
plural: أيامٌ	أيَّامٌ :
difficult صعبٌ	صَعْبٌ : — and صعبٌ مجدهٌ
diligent مجتهدٌ	مُجْتَهِدٌ :
director مديرٌ	مُدِيرٌ :
dirty وسليٌ	وَسْلَى :
divide قسمٌ	قَسْمٌ : — to eat أَكْلٌ
deaf أطليسٌ	أَطْلِيسٌ : — imperfect: يَأْكُلُ
fem. طرسلاةٌ	طَرْسَلَةٌ :
plural: طرميشٌ	طَرْمِيشٌ : — plur.
day (opposite of night) بَنَارٌ	بَنَارٌ (opposite of night)
deaf أطليسٌ	أَطْلِيسٌ :
dog كلبٌ	كَلْبٌ :
plural: كلابٌ	كَلَابٌ :
door بَابٌ	بَابٌ :
plural: أبوابٌ	أَبْوَابٌ :
dear (price) غالٌ	غَالٌ :
plural: أغلى منْ	أَغْلَى مِنْ :
descend تَرَلَ	تَرَلَ :
Imperfect: يَنْزَلُ	يَنْزَلُ : — Imperfect:
different مختلفٌ	مُخْتَلِفٌ : — different

easy سهلٌ	سَهْلٌ : — imperative: ازْهَلْ
dumb أخرسٌ	أَخْرَسٌ : — plural: أخْرَسَاتٍ
cup فنجانٌ	فَنِيْجَانٌ : — plural: فَنِيْجَانَاتٍ
E	
eleven أحد عشر	أَحَد عَشَرَ : — plural: أَهْمَالٌ
divide أَسْهَلُ	أَسْهَلُ : — easier
eat أَكْلٌ	أَكْلٌ : — to eat أَكْلٌ
imperfect: يَأْكُلُ	يَأْكُلُ : — imperfect:
the eleventh الحادي عشر	الْحَادِي عَشَرَ :
the eighteenth الحاديه عشرة	الْحَادِيَة عَشْرَةً :
eight إثناية	إِثْنَانِيَّةٌ :
feminine إمكان	إِمْكَانٌ :
the eighth الثامن	الثَّامِنُ :
the English English language	الْأَنْجُلِيزِيَّةُ لِغَةُ الْأَنْجُلِيزِيَّةِ :
eighteen إثنتeen	إِثْنَاعْشَرَ :
feminine إثناي عشرة	إِثْنَاعْشَرَةَ :
the eighteenth الثامن عشر	الثَّامِن عَشَرَ :
feminine إثناي عشر	إِثْنَاعْشَرَةَ :
enter دخـل	دَخْلَ :
imperfect: يَدْخُلُ	يَدْخُلُ : — imperfect:
evening مسائيٌ	مَسَاءٌ :
school مدرسةٌ	مَدْرَسَةٌ : — evening مسائيٌ
eye عينٌ	عَيْنٌ :
F	
far بعيدٌ	بَعِيدٌ :
face ووجهٌ	وَجْهٌ :
draw رسمٌ	رَسْمٌ : — plural: رَسْمَاتٍ
farther أبعدٌ	أَبْعَدٌ : — farther

farmer	فَلَّاَجٌ	food	طَهَامٌ
—	فَلَّاَجُونَ :	foolish	أَهْمَقٌ
fat	سَعِينٌ	— plural:	فَلَّاَجَاتٌ and بَسَاتِينٌ
—	أَسْعَنْ :	fatter	سَعِينٌ
father	وَالِّاَبٌ	fortunate	سَعِيدٌ
—	وَالِّاَبُ and أَبُ :	four	أَرْبَعَةٌ
field	حَفَلٌ	fortunate	سَعِيدٌ
—	حَفَلُونَ :	four	أَرْبَعَةٌ
to find	وَجَدَ	fortunate	سَعِيدٌ
fire-wood	حَطَنٌ	fortunate	سَعِيدٌ
the first	الْأَوَّلُ	fortunate	سَعِيدٌ
— feminine:	الْأَوَّلِيَ :	forty	أَرْبَعُونَ
fish	سَمَّالٌ	forty	أَرْبَعُونَ
five	تَمْلِكٌ	fourteen	أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشَرٌ
—	تَمْلِكَاتٌ	fourteen	أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشَرٌ
feminine:	جَنْسٌ	fourteen	أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشَرٌ
— the fifth	الْأَخْتَامِسُ	fourteen	أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشَرٌ
— feminine:	الْأَوَّلِيَ :	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ
fox	تَمْلِكٌ	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ
hair	شَعْرٌ	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ
—	تَمْلِكٌ	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ
half	نِصْفٌ	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ
—	نِصْفٌ and نِصْفٌ	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ
Friday	يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ	go out	يَذْهَبُ
hand	لِدٌ	go out	يَذْهَبُ
—	لِدٌ	Imperfect:	يَذْهَبَ
handicraft	صَدِيقٌ	go out	يَذْهَبَ
—	صَدِيقٌ friend	go out	يَذْهَبَ
happy	مَسْرُورٌ	go out	يَذْهَبَ
—	مَسْرُورٌ and سَعِيدٌ	go out	يَذْهَبَ
hare	أَرْبَابٌ	go out	يَذْهَبَ
—	أَرْبَابٌ أَرْبَابٌ	go out	يَذْهَبَ
from	مِنْ	go out	يَذْهَبَ
Muslim	جَمِيعُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ	go out	يَذْهَبَ

G	good	جَيْدٌ and طَيْبٌ
—	better than	جَيْدٌ مِنْ
gate	بَابٌ	بَابٌ
— plural:	أَبْوَابٌ	أَبْوَابٌ
grand-mother	جَدَّةٌ	جَدَّةٌ
grand-son	جَمِيلٌ	جَمِيلٌ
grand-father	جَدٌ	جَدٌ
gratis	مُجانًا	مُجانًا
great	كَبِيرٌ	كَبِيرٌ
— greater	كَبِيرٌ وَكَبِيرٌ	كَبِيرٌ وَكَبِيرٌ
green	أَخْضَرٌ	أَخْضَرٌ
— feminine:	خَضْرَاءُ	خَضْرَاءُ
God	اللَّهُ	اللَّهُ
— plural:	خَضْرَاءُ	خَضْرَاءُ
H	haste	عَجَلَةٌ and سَرْعَةٌ
—	in haste	عَجَلَةٌ and سَرْعَةٌ
hasten	يُسْرِعُ	يُسْرِعُ
—	to hasten	يُسْرِعَ
hand	لِدٌ	لِدٌ
—	لِدٌ	have
handicraft	صَدِيقٌ	لِ (See page 15)
—	صَدِيقٌ friend	لِ (See page 15)
happy	مَسْرُورٌ	have as auxiliary verb see
hare	أَرْبَابٌ	lesson 11 B.
—	أَرْبَابٌ أَرْبَابٌ	he has
from	مِنْ	(See also lesson 11 B.)
Muslim	جَمِيعُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ	

**head** رأس horse حصان

— plural: رؤوس plural: أحصنة

— Imperfect: سمعتُ hour ساعة

to hear سمعتُ

— Imperfect: سمعتُ house بيت

— plural: بيوت plural: بيوت

heart قلب

— how? كيـنـ how?

— Imperfect: كـمـ how many?

heavy ثقيل

— how much? كـمـ how much?

— heavier ثقـلـ how old?

hen دجاجة

See page 136 vocabulary

hen دجاجة

— how many? كـمـ how many?

— Imperfect: كـمـ how many?

her هـا (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B.

here هنا

him هـ (suffix) See lesson 17 his هـ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B.

holiness مقدس

hundred مائة

— and مـهـ and

hunting صـادـ

hunting صـادـ

here هنا

— to hunt صـادـ

hunting صـادـ

him هـ (suffix) See lesson 17 his هـ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B.

hunting صـادـ

hunting صـادـ

holy مقدس

— plural: مـهـادـونـ

hunting صـادـ

ill مریض

— feminine: امیهـ

illiterate

I have (See also lesson 11. B.)

— feminine: امیهـ

idle كـسـلـانـ

— feminine: امیهـ

Kitchen مطبخ

immediately لـاحـلـاـدـاـنـ

important مهم

— in front of قـدـامـ

children are in the garden الاولاد في البستانـ

children are in the gardenـ

it هوـ

it هوـ

feminine: هيـ

it in the objective case هـ (suffix)

inspection تفـيـشـ

See page 121 vocabulary

inspector مفـتـسـ

See lesson 17

iron حـلـيدـ

— feminine: هـاـ (suffix)

Jaffa يـافـاـ

Jerusalem القدس

jar جـرـةـ

just as كماـ

key مفتـاحـ

key مفتـاحـ

key مفتـاحـ

key مفتـاحـ

knife سـكـنـ

knife سـكـنـ

king مـلـكـ

king مـلـكـ

know عـرـفـ

know عـرـفـ

idle كـسـلـانـ

idle كـسـلـانـ

is The copula "is" ("cre") is omitted in the Arabic translation e.g.

"He is big"; "the

children are in the garden".

## L

laboratory	مَهْمَلٌ
— plural:	مَهَمَّلُونَ
labourer	عَاملٌ
— plural:	عَمَالُونَ
lady	سَيِّدَةٌ
— plural:	سَيِّدَاتٌ
lamb	خَرْفٌ
— plural:	خَرْفَاتٌ
lamp	فِنْدِيلٌ وَ مِصْبَاحٌ
— plural:	فِنْدِيلَاتٌ وَ مِصْبَاحَاتٌ
language	لِسَانٌ وَ لُغَةٌ
large	وَاسِعٌ وَ كَبِيرٌ
laugh	ضَحْكَاتٌ
— Imperfect:	يَضْحِكُ
lazy	كَسْلَانٌ
— plural:	كَسْلَانَاتٌ
learn	دَرْسٌ وَ تَعْلِيمٌ
— Imperfect:	يَدْرِسُ وَ يَتَعَلَّمُ

## M

million	مَلِيُونٌ
mad	مَجْنُونٌ
magazine	مَجَانِينٌ
— plural:	مَجَانِينَ
man	رَجُلٌ
— plural:	رِجَالٌ
minister	وَزِيرٌ
— plural:	وَزَارَاءٌ
minute	دَقَّقَةٌ
— plural:	دَقَّاقَاتٌ
marine	مَلَاحٌ
market	سُوقٌ
month	شَهْرٌ
Monday	يَوْمُ الْأَئْنَيْنِ
month	شَهْرٌ
— plural:	شَهْرَاتٌ
lion	أسدٌ
— plural:	أسدَاتٌ
martyr	شَهِيدٌ
— plural:	شَهِيدَاتٌ
moon	قَمَسٌ
— plural:	قَمَسَاتٌ
more	أَكْثَرٌ
— plural:	أَكْثَرَاتٌ
me	أَنَا وَ أَنْتَ وَ إِنْتَ
— suffix:	فِي
See lesson 17	
morning	صَبَاحٌ
Moslem	مُسْلِمٌ
mosque	سَجَاجِيمٌ وَ مَسْجِدٌ
— plural:	سَجَاجِيمَاتٌ وَ مَسْجِدَاتٌ
merchant	مَارِجٌ
meat	لَحْمٌ
longer	أَطْوَلٌ
long	طَوْلِيٌّ
load	شَحْنٌ وَ حَمْلٌ
load	شَحْنٌ وَ حَمْلٌ
longer	أَطْوَلٌ
long	طَوْلِيٌّ
longest	أَطْوَلَاتٌ
longest	أَطْوَلَاتٌ
— plural:	أَطْوَلَاتٍ
loyal	أَمِينٌ وَ بُخْلُصٌ
loyalty	أَمَانَةٌ وَ إِخْلَاصٌ
luck	سَعْيٌ وَ حِلْبَةٌ
milk	حَلْبٌ
— plural:	حَلْبَاتٌ

<p><b>O</b></p> <p>— feminine <b>إِنْدَى</b> <i>in-diy</i> to open <b>فَتَحَ</b> <i>fet-hah</i></p> <p>— Imperfect <b>مَهْتَجَ</b> <i>meh-tahj</i> or <b>أَوْ</b> <i>aw</i></p> <p>the orient <b>الْمَهْرَقُ</b> <i>al-meh-raq</i> orientalist <b>مُهْتَاجِرٌ</b> <i>muh-tahj-er</i></p> <p><b>الْأَخْرَى</b> <i>al-akh-riyah</i> the other</p> <p>— feminine <b>الْأَخْرَى</b> <i>al-akh-riyah</i> the other</p> <p>— feminine <b>مَرْهَةٌ</b> <i>mar-hah</i> once</p> <p>our <b>نَا</b> <i>na</i> (suffix) See lesson 8 and Lesson 48 A. B.</p> <p>— feminine <b>فَوْقِيٌّ</b> <i>fawq-iyy</i> over</p> <p>ox <b>بُورْز</b> <i>bawz</i></p> <p>— plural <b>بِيَارٌ</b> <i>biyar</i> and <b>أُوَارٌ</b> <i>auw-er</i>: <i>one of</i></p> <p>See lesson 55 C. (1)</p> <p><b>P</b></p> <p>part <b>جُزْءٌ وَ قُسْمٌ</b> <i>ju-zun wa qus-mun</i> جزء and قسم</p> <p>— plural: <b>صَفَحَاتٍ</b> <i>sa-fahat-in</i>: <i>and أَفْسَانٍ</i> <i>af-sahn-in</i></p> <p>— plural: <b>شَرَائِكٌ</b> <i>shar-aikun</i>: <i>partner</i></p> <p>— plural: <b>شَرَائِكٌ</b> <i>shar-aikun</i>: <i>partner</i></p> <p>the parents <b>الْأَبْلَانِ</b> <i>al-ab-lan</i></p>
<p><b>N</b></p> <p>much <b>سَكِيرٌ</b> <i>sak-air</i></p> <p>my <b>يَـ</b> <i>yah-</i> See lesson 8 and lesson 48. A. B.</p> <p>name <b>هَـمْزَـا</b> <i>hamzah-</i> This Alif is Hamza-l-wasi</p> <p>nineteen <b>سَعْـةٌ عَشْـرٌ</b> <i>sah-ah-sah-r</i></p> <p>feminine <b>سَعْـةٌ عَشْـرٌ</b> <i>sah-ah-sah-r</i></p> <p>ninety <b>سَعْـونَ</b> <i>sah-oo-n</i></p> <p>The ninetieth <b>الْسَّعْـوَـنَـى</b> <i>al-sah-oo-nah</i></p> <p>no <b>لَا</b> <i>la</i></p> <p>noon <b>الظَّهِيرَـةُ</b> <i>al-zah-heer-ah</i></p> <p>neighbour <b>جَـارٌ</b> <i>jaar</i></p> <p>neighbour <b>جَـارٌ</b> <i>jaar</i></p> <p>— plural: <b>جَـارِـاً</b> <i>jaar-ah</i></p> <p>new <b>جَـدِيدٌ</b> <i>jadid</i></p> <p>newspaper <b>جَـرِيدَـةٌ</b> <i>jaridah</i></p> <p>plural: <b>جَـرِيدَـاً</b> <i>jaridah</i></p> <p>night <b>لَيلٌ</b> <i>leel</i></p> <p>night <b>لَيلٌ</b> <i>leel</i></p> <p>— plural: <b>لَيَـلَـا</b> <i>ley-la</i></p> <p>nine <b>سَـبْـعَـةٌ</b> <i>sab-ah</i></p> <p>feminine: <b>سَـبْـعَـةٌ</b> <i>sab-ah</i></p> <p>the ninth <b>الْـثَـالِـثَـةُ</b> <i>al-thalithah</i></p>
<p><b>I</b></p> <p>Particle of address <b>يَا</b> <i>ya</i></p> <p>See also lesson 25 (1). b.</p> <p>officer <b>ضَابِطٌ</b> <i>zabt</i></p> <p>ضَابِطٌ <i>zabt</i> — plural: <b>ضَابِطَـا</b> <i>zabt-ah</i></p> <p>old <b>قَدِيمٌ</b> <i>qadeem</i></p> <p>age <b>عُـسْـنَـى</b> <i>usn-ah</i></p> <p>See also page 136.</p> <p>man <b>سَـيِـعَـى</b> <i>siyah</i></p> <p>Vocabulary</p> <p>on <b>عَلَى</b> <i>ala</i></p> <p>once <b>مَرَّةٌ</b> <i>mar-hah</i></p> <p>adverbial: <b>مَرَّةً</b> <i>mar-hah</i></p> <p>after-noon <b>بَعْدَ الظَّهِيرَـةِ</b> <i>bud al-zah-heerah</i></p> <p>before-noon <b>قَبْلَ الظَّهِيرَـةِ</b> <i>qabl al-zah-heerah</i></p> <p>one <b>وَاحِدٌ</b> <i>wahid</i></p> <p>one <b>وَاحِدَةٌ</b> <i>wahidah</i></p> <p>one <b>أَحَدٌ</b> <i>ahad</i></p> <p>not before the perfect form e. g. <b>مَا كَتَبَ</b> <i>ma ktab</i>: "he did not write."</p> <p>before the Imperfect form e. g. <b>لَا كَتَبَ</b> <i>la ktab</i>: "he does not write"</p>

partnership	شِرْكَةٌ شَرْكَةٌ وَشَرْكَةٌ	شِرْكَةٌ شَرْكَةٌ وَشَرْكَةٌ	- imperfect: قَبْرٌ قَبْرٌ قَبْرٌ
the past	الماضي	قَبْرٌ	- poor
peasant	الناصري	قَبْرٌ	- Imperfect فَقَرْرٌ فَقَرْرٌ فَقَرْرٌ
pest	الناعور	فَقَرْرٌ	- plural, فَقَرْرٌ فَقَرْرٌ فَقَرْرٌ
picture	صُورَةٌ	فَقَرْرٌ	- poorer أَفْقَرٌ أَفْقَرٌ أَفْقَرٌ
piece	قطعة	أَفْقَرٌ	- plural: صُورٌ صُورٌ صُورٌ
possessor	صاحب	صُورٌ	- possessor صَاحِبٌ صَاحِبٌ صَاحِبٌ
piece	قطعة	صَاحِبٌ	- plural أَصْحَابٌ أَصْحَابٌ أَصْحَابٌ
post	بريد	أَصْحَابٌ	- post بَرِيدٌ بَرِيدٌ بَرِيدٌ
pilgrim	حجاج	بَرِيدٌ	- plural بَرِيدٌ بَرِيدٌ بَرِيدٌ
pilgrimage	حج	بَرِيدٌ	- pilgrimage حَجَّ حَجَّ حَجَّ
pistol	مسدس	بَرِيدٌ	- plural مَسَدِسٌ مَسَدِسٌ مَسَدِسٌ
play	لعب	بَرِيدٌ	- plural لَعْبٌ لَعْبٌ لَعْبٌ
plough	حرث	لَعْبٌ	- Imperfect يَلْعَبُ يَلْعَبُ يَلْعَبُ

quarter	ربع	قَرْنَيْهٌ	قرآن
question	سؤال	قَرْنَيْهٌ	السائل
of a town	حَارَةٌ	قَرْنَيْهٌ	- plural: أَسْلَالٌ أَسْلَالٌ أَسْلَالٌ

Q	queen	ملكة	قَرْنَيْهٌ
S	saddle	سرنج	سَرْجٌ
S	school	مَدْرَسَةٌ	مَدْرَسَةٌ
S	sailor	ملاح	مَلاَحٌ
S	sea	بحر	بَحْرٌ
S	sand	رمل	رَمْلٌ
S	saturday	اليوم السبت	يَوْمُ الْسَّبْتِ
S	second	ثانية	ثَانِيَةٌ ثَانِيَةٌ ثَانِيَةٌ
S	say	قال	قَالَ
S	said	قلت	قُلْتُ



▪ feminine تِلْكَ <sup>تِلْكَ</sup>	— imperfect يُنْهِي <sup>يُنْهِي</sup>	— feminine لِكِ (suffix)
— that ox ذَلِكَ الْأَنْوَرُ <sup>ذَلِكَ الْأَنْوَرُ</sup>	— this ox هَذِهِ هَذِهِ <sup>هَذِهِ هَذِهِ</sup>	time وقت <sup>وقت</sup>
— that cow ذَلِكَ الْبَقَرُ <sup>ذَلِكَ الْبَقَرُ</sup>	— this cow هَذِهِ الْبَقَرُ <sup>هَذِهِ الْبَقَرُ</sup>	— plural أَوْقَاتٌ <sup>أَوْقَاتٌ</sup>
▪ their لِكِ (See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B.)	their لِكِ (See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B.)	— plural قِبَالٌ : <sup>قِبَالٌ</sup>
— feminine مُهْنَ <sup>مُهْنَ</sup>	— feminine مُهْنَ <sup>مُهْنَ</sup>	tribe قَبْيلَةً <sup>قبيلةً</sup>
them لِكِ (suffix) See lesson 17	them لِكِ (suffix) See lesson 17	thou أَنْتَ <sup>أَنْتَ</sup>
— feminine مُهْنَ <sup>مُهْنَ</sup>	— feminine مُهْنَ <sup>مُهْنَ</sup>	thou أَنْتَ <sup>أَنْتَ</sup>
then بِعْدَ <sup>بِعْدَ</sup>	then بِعْدَ <sup>بِعْدَ</sup>	thou hast أَلْتَ <sup>أَلْتَ</sup>
there هَنَاءً <sup>هَنَاءً</sup>	there هَنَاءً <sup>هَنَاءً</sup>	thou hast أَلْتَ <sup>أَلْتَ</sup>
these هُورَلَاءُ <sup>هُورَلَاءُ</sup>	these هُورَلَاءُ <sup>هُورَلَاءُ</sup>	thou hast أَلْتَ <sup>أَلْتَ</sup>
they لِكِ <sup>لِكِ</sup>	— plural الفَ <sup>الفَ</sup> and الأَفَ <sup>الأَفَ</sup>	thousand أَلْفَانِ <sup>أَلْفَانِ</sup>
— feminine هَنَنَ <sup>هَنَنَ</sup>	— feminine هَنَنَ <sup>هَنَنَ</sup>	to-morrow غَدَاءً <sup>غَدَاءً</sup>
— they have لَهُمْ <sup>لَهُمْ</sup>	— they have لَهُمْ <sup>لَهُمْ</sup>	too أَيْضًا <sup>أَيْضًا</sup>
— fem. سَارِقٌ <sup>سَارِقٌ</sup>	— fem. سَارِقٌ <sup>سَارِقٌ</sup>	two إِثْنَانِ <sup>إِثْنَانِ</sup>
thief سَارِقٌ <sup>سَارِقٌ</sup>	— plural أَسْنَانٌ : <sup>أَسْنَانٌ</sup>	twice مَرَّاثَانِ <sup>مرَّاثَانِ</sup>
thing شَيْءٌ <sup>شيءٌ</sup>	— plural أَلْفَافٌ <sup>أَلْفَافٌ</sup>	twenty عِشْرُونَ <sup>عشرون</sup>
— plural أَشْيَاءٌ <sup>أشياءٌ</sup>	— plural أَلْفَافٌ <sup>أَلْفَافٌ</sup>	twelve إِلْفَتَنَاءً <sup>إلفتناء</sup>
▪ think (believe) خَطَنَ <sup>خطن</sup>	— plural أَعْمَالٌ <sup>أَعْمَالٌ</sup>	Tuesday يَوْمُ الْمَلَائِكَةِ <sup>يوم الملائكة</sup>

tree شَجَرَةً <sup>شجرةً</sup>	— imperfect يَعْلَمُ <sup>يَعْلَمُ</sup>	— feminine لِكِ (on the father's side)
tribe قَبْيلَةً <sup>قبيلةً</sup>	tribe قَبْيلَةً <sup>قبيلةً</sup>	— imperfect يَعْلَمُ <sup>يَعْلَمُ</sup>
thou أَنْتَ <sup>أنتَ</sup>	thou أَنْتَ <sup>أنتَ</sup>	until حَتَّى : <sup>حتى</sup>
thou hast أَلْتَ <sup>ألتَ</sup>	thou hast أَلْتَ <sup>ألتَ</sup>	upon فَوْقَ : <sup>فوق</sup>
thousand أَلْفَانِ <sup>ألفانِ</sup>	thousand أَلْفَانِ <sup>ألفانِ</sup>	under يَعْتَدَ <sup>يتحت</sup>
to-morrow غَدَاءً <sup>غداءً</sup>	to-morrow غَدَاءً <sup>غداءً</sup>	to understand فَهِمَ <sup>فهم</sup>
twelve إِلْفَتَنَاءً <sup>إلفتناءً</sup>	twelve إِلْفَتَنَاءً <sup>إلفتناءً</sup>	— plural أَعْمَالٌ <sup>أعمالٌ</sup>
Tuesday يَوْمُ الْمَلَائِكَةِ <sup>يوم الملائكة</sup>	— plural أَعْمَالٌ <sup>أعمالٌ</sup>	— feminine لِكِ (on the mother's side)
Y uncle عَمٌ <sup>عم</sup>	Y uncle عَمٌ <sup>عم</sup>	— imperfect يَعْلَمُ <sup>يَعْلَمُ</sup>
— (on the mother's side) حَالٌ	— (on the mother's side) حَالٌ	— until حَتَّى : <sup>حتى</sup>
U — until حَتَّى : <sup>حتى</sup>	— until حَتَّى : <sup>حتى</sup>	— upon فَوْقَ : <sup>فوق</sup>
— the third الْأَدْلَى <sup>الآدلة</sup>	— the third الْأَدْلَى <sup>الآدلة</sup>	— under يَعْتَدَ : <sup>تحت</sup>
— thirteen ثَلَاثَةٌ عَشَرَ <sup>ثلاثة عشر</sup>	— thirteen ثَلَاثَةٌ عَشَرَ <sup>ثلاثة عشر</sup>	— to understand فَهِمَ : <sup>فهم</sup>
— fem. سَارِقٌ <sup>سارق</sup>	— fem. سَارِقٌ <sup>سارق</sup>	— us نَا : <sup>نا</sup> (suffix) See lesson 17
thirty بِلَامِيُونَ <sup>ثلاثين</sup>	thirty بِلَامِيُونَ <sup>ثلاثين</sup>	
V very جَدِيداً <sup>جداً</sup>	village قَرْيَةٌ <sup>قرية</sup>	
vest صَدْرِيَّةٌ <sup>صدرية</sup>	vest صَدْرِيَّةٌ <sup>صدرية</sup>	
— plural قَرْيَاتٍ <sup>قريات</sup>	— plural قَرْيَاتٍ <sup>قريات</sup>	
thy لِكِ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48, A. B.	thy لِكِ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48, A. B.	



— You (fem.) have	لَكُنْ See also lesson 11 B.	— Younger than	صَغِيرٌ سِنْتَهُ مِنْ
— You in objective case	كُمْ (suffix)	YOUR	كُمْ (suffix) See lesson 8 end lesson 48 A, B.
fem.	كُنْ (suffix). See lesson 17	feminine	كُنْ (suffix)

to the

## Arabic Language and Grammar

VOLUME ONE

by

DR. JOCHANAN KAPLIWATZKY

# KEY

RUBIN MASS / JERUSALEM

**Note 1:** In this key a translation is given only of the texts for the conversation-lessons in the book 'Arabic Language and Grammar'. The texts of the stories in the above book are composed of the matter in the preceding conversation-lessons and therefore no translation of it is necessary here.

**Note 2:** The English translation here of the Arabic text in the book "Arabic Language and Grammar" is, as far as possible, a litteral one, care being taken especially to the Arabic original in order to facilitate the understanding of the structure of the Arabic sentences for the English beginner. For the same reason the second person singular (thou, thee, thy) is used in the key as well as in the book.

## Fifth Lesson

1. I have a house and thou (m.) hast a house
2. We have a large house
3. He has a big dog and she has a big dog
4. They (m.) have a fat dog and they (f.) have a fat dog
5. We have a large garden and they (m.) have a large vineyard
6. She has a vineyard and he has a garden
7. Thou (m.) hast a large garden and a large vineyard.
8. A vineyard and a garden
9. A house and a vineyard
10. She has a big book and I have a book
11. You (m.) have a book and you (f.) have a fat ox
12. We have a fat ox and thou (m.) hast an ox and a dog
13. He has an ox and thou (m.) hast a dog

1. أَنَا كَلْبٌ وَهُنْمٌ كَلْبٌ 2. لَهٗ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ وَهَا بُيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ 3. لَهُمْ يَوْزٌ سَمِينٌ وَكَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ فَلَهُمْ كَرْمٌ كَبِيرٌ وَهُنْمٌ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ 4. لَكِ كِتَابٌ وَلَنَا كِتَابٌ 5. هَا كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُنْ كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ 6. لَهُنْ كَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ وَلِيْ تَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ .

## Seventh Lesson

1. I have a father and a mother and he has a father and a mother.
2. A big door and a big window
3. We have a big door and they (m.) have a big window
4. She has a big and a fat cock and they (f.) have a big and a fat cock
5. You (m.) have a fat ox and a big dog
6. You (f.) have a house and a garden and she has a large vineyard
7. I and thou (m.)
8. Thou (m.) and he
9. He is big and fat and thou (m.) art big and fat
10. I have a big and fat elephant and he has a fat ox
11. She has a copy-book and a book and thou (f.) hast a copy-book and a book
12. An elephant and an ox. A house and a garden.

1. يَأْكُلُ كَبِيرٌ وَشَكَرٌ كَبِيرٌ 2. أَلَيْ فَيلٌ سَمِينٌ وَلَنَا يَوْزٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ 3. لَيْ دَفْرٌ وَكِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ

كتاب ۴. لها ديلك سمين ۵. إن كلاب د لـكـن  
كلاب ۶. أب د وـام ۷. أنا وـهو. هو وـأنت ۸. هوـ  
ـسمـن ۹. أنت سـمـن د وـكـير ۱۰. لـكـم د أـب د وـام  
ولـنا أـب د وـام.

## Ninth Lesson

1. I have a hare and thou (m.) hast a hare 2. Thy (m.) hare is bigger than my hare 3. He has a dog and I have a dog 4. His dog is fatter than my dog 5. Salim is a big boy 6. Shakir is a big pupil 7. Salim is bigger than my pupil 8. Shakir is bigger than my boy 9. Where is thy (m.) ox ? — My ox is in my garden 10. Thy (m.) book is bigger than my book 11. Her vineyard is bigger than my vineyard 12. His ox is bigger and fatter than my ox 13. Thy (m.) ox and thy (m.) dog are in my garden 14. Where is thy (m.) pupil ? — My pupil is in my vineyard 15. His house is bigger than my house 16. Where is my hare ? — Thy (m.) hare is in my vineyard.

## Twelfth Lesson

1. What is this ? — This is an ass 2. This is my ass  
3. This is thy (m.) dog 4. My ass ate and thy (m.) ass did not eat 5. I ate and thou (m.) didst not eat 6. Who has written and who has drawn ? — Salim has written and I have drawn 7. I have a brother and a sister and he has a brother and a sister 8. Shakir is bigger than my brother 9. I have a camel and thou (m.) hast a camel. Thy (m.) camel is bigger and fatter than my camel 10. Who went out of my garden ? — My brother went out from there 11. Who has eaten in my garden ? — My father has eaten there 12. My brother has written here and my sister has written there 13. My camel has eaten here and thy (m.) camel has eaten there 14. They (m.) have written and did not draw 15. They (f.) have drawn and did not write 16. We went out of my garden and You (m.) did not go out from there 17. They (m.) have drawn and You (f.) did not draw 18. We and You (m.). They (m.) and You (f.). I and they (f.). Thou (m.) and he. She and thou (f.) 19. We have written and did not draw. You (m.) have drawn and did not write. They (m.) have written and did not draw.

وـخـنـنـ رـسـمـنـاـ ۳. أـيـ خـرـجـ مـنـ بـسـتـانـيـ ۴. أـمـيـ خـرـجـتـ مـنـ  
كـلـبـ دـ أـسـمـنـ مـنـ كـلـبـ ۲. أـيـ يـورـمـ ۳.  
يـورـمـ فـيـ بـسـتـانـيـ وـهـوـ مـاـ كـتـبـ ۶. لـتـمـيـزـيـ أـخـ  
كـرـمـيـ دـ نـخـنـنـ كـتـبـنـاـ وـهـوـ مـاـ كـتـبـ ۶. لـتـمـيـزـيـ أـخـ  
وـأـخـتـ وـلـكـ أـخـ ۷. جـمـلـ أـكـلـ وـحـمـارـيـ مـاـ أـكـلـ ۸. مـاـ  
فـيـ بـسـتـانـيـ ۵. وـلـدـهـ أـكـبـرـ مـنـ وـلـدـيـ ۶. أـيـ تـلـمـيـزـيـ  
هـذـاـ ۸ـ هـذـاـ جـمـلـ وـكـلـبـ كـمـ أـكـبـرـ وـأـسـمـنـ مـنـ كـلـبـيـ  
هـذـاـ ۹ـ هـذـاـ جـمـلـ وـكـلـبـ كـمـ أـكـبـرـ وـهـيـ مـاـ أـكـلـتـ  
هـذـاـ ۱۰ـ أـكـلـنـاـ فـيـ بـسـتـانـيـ ۱۱ـ هـوـ أـكـلـ وـهـيـ مـاـ أـكـلـتـ  
۱۲ـ أـخـتـيـ كـتـبـتـ وـأـنـثـ مـاـ كـتـبـتـ ۱۳ـ أـخـوـمـ

## Fourteenth Lesson

- My vineyard is far and thy (m.) vineyard is near from here.
- His house is near from here and his garden is far from here.
- Who has read and who has written?—My sister has read and I have written.
- What did thy (m.) sister read?—My sister read my book.
- My dog is black and thy (m.) dog is red.
- I have blue ink and thou (m.) hast black ink.
- My copy-book is heavy and thy (m.) copy-book is light.
- My brother has read my newspaper and my neighbour has written in my copy-book.
- They (f.) have read and they (m.) have written.
- We have written and you (m.) have read.
- My garden is far from here and thy (m.) garden is farther than it.
- My vineyard is near from here and his vineyard is farther than it.
- My ink is blue and thy (m.) ink is black.
- My cock is heavy and his cock is light.
- He has read my newspaper and she did not read.

١. اخْتَلَكَ كَتَبَتْ وَأَنَا قَرَأْتُ ٢. أَيْنَ جَازَكَ؟ — هُوَ فِي  
كَرْمِي ٣. حِبْرُهَا أَسْوَدٌ وَحِبْرُهُ أَزْرَقٌ ٤. بُشِّتَاهِنْ  
أَفْرَبُ مِنْ كَرْمِي ٥. دِيكَلَ أَثْلَلَ مِنْ دِيكِي ٦. مَا  
بَسْتَانِي ٧. جَمِيلِي شَرِبَ وَجَمِيلُهَا مَا شَرِبَ ٨.  
شَرِبُوا وَخَنْنَ مَا شَرِبُنا ٩. هُوَ خَرَجَ مِنْ بَسْتَيِ  
بَسْتَيِ ١٠. بَيْتِي أَفْرَبُ مِنْ بَيْتِهِ ١١. فَلَهَا كَبِيرٌ مِنْ قَبْلِي  
قَرَأْ ١٢. بَيْتِهِ أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ بَيْتِي ١٣. دَفْرُهُ أَثْقَلٌ مِنْ  
دَفْرِي ١٤. أَيْنَ كَبِيسْكَمْ؟ — كَلْدِي فِي بُسْتَافِي

## Fifteenth Lesson

- Who has drunk and who has eaten?— My brother has drunk and I have eaten.
- They (m.) ate and did not drink and they (f.) drank and did not eat.
- My hare has drunk and thy (f.) hare has not drunk.
- His hare is fatter than my hare.
- My brother entered my vineyard and thy (m.) neighbour went out of it.
- I have a fat lamb and she has a fat lamb.
- His lamb is big and my lamb is bigger (than it).
- Thou (m.) art bigger than my brother and I am bigger than thee (m.).
- Thy (f.) pupil is big and her pupil is bigger (than he).
- Who, went out of my garden?— My grand-father went out of it.
- Where is thy (m.) grand-father and thy grand-mother?— My grand-father and my grand-mother are in my garden and my mother and grand-mother are in my vineyard.

١. جَدِيدَ كَتَبَتْ وَأَنَا قَرَأْ ٢. خَرْفُوكَمْ أَسْمَنْ

مِنْ بَسْرُوفِي ٣. أَيْنَ أَمْسَنَا؟ — أَمْسَكَنْ فِي كَرْمِي

٤. تَلْمِذَكَ كَبِيرٌ وَتَلْمِيذِي أَكْبَرٌ مِنْهُ وَجَدِيدِهِ دَخَلَتْ

بَسْتَانِي ٥. جَمِيلِي شَرِبَ وَجَمِيلُهَا مَا شَرِبَ ٦.  
شَرِبُوا وَخَنْنَ مَا شَرِبُنا ٧. هُوَ خَرَجَ مِنْ بَسْتَيِ

بَسْتَيِ ٨. مِنْ قَرَأْ وَمِنْ كَتَبَ؟ — أَنَا كَتَبَتْ وَجَارِي  
قَرَأْ ٩. بَيْتِي وَخَنْنَ قَرَأْ أَنَا وَهُمْ مَا قَرُوْوا ١٠. هِيَ كَتَبَتْ  
وَأَخْتَرَهَا مَا كَتَبَتْ ١١. هِيَ أَكَلَتْ وَهُوَ مَا أَكَلَ

١٢. بَيْتِهِ أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ بَيْتِي ١٣. دَفْرُهُ أَثْقَلٌ مِنْ  
دَفْرِي ١٤. أَيْنَ كَبِيسْكَمْ؟ — كَلْدِي فِي بُسْتَافِي

## Eighteenth Lesson

- Where did Ibrahim find my horse?— He found it in my garden.
- Where did Ahmad find my cow?— he found it in my vineyard.
- Who has beaten my brother?— Thy (m.) neighbour has beaten him.
- Who found you (m.) in my garden?— Thy (m.) neighbour found us there.
- Who

- has beaten you (m.)? — Thy (m.) neighbour has beaten us  
6. Who has eaten my bread? — We have eaten it 7. Who  
has drunk my milk? — We have drunk it 8. Who has beaten  
thee (m.)? — Thy (m.) neighbour has beaten me 9. Who has  
broken my cup? — Thy (m.) sister has broken it 10. Who has  
beaten my ass? — Thy (m.) pupil has beaten it 11. My brother  
did not break my cup. My sister has broken it 12. My sister  
has drunk my milk and my brother did not drink it 13. Who  
has beaten my camel? — Ahmad has beaten it 14. Your (m.)  
horse is bigger and fatter than my horse 15. I have black  
ink and he has green ink 16. She has a black dog and you  
(m.) have a white dog 17. I have a horse and an ass and  
you (m.) have an ox and a camel 18. Thy (m.) cup is bigger  
than my cup.

1. من وجد كتابي? — أخْتَيْ وَجَدَهُ 2. من  
صَرْبَ تَلْمِيذِي? — جَارِنَا ضَرْبَهُ 3. من كَسَرَ فِنجَانِي?  
أَخْتَهُمْ كَسَرَهُ 4. حَبْزُكَنْ أَسْوَدُ وَحِبْزُهَا أَزْرَقُ  
أَخْتَهُمْ 5. حَبْزُهَا أَخْضَرُ وَحِبْزُهُ أَحْمَرُ 6. إِبْرِهِيمُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ  
أَخْيَهُ 7. أَحْمَدُ كَسَرَ فِنجَانِي 8. لِي جَارٌ وَلَهَا جَارٌ  
جَارُهَا أَسْمَنُ مِنْ جَارِي 9. حَصَانُهُ كَبِيرٌ وَحَصَانُهُ أَكْبَرٌ  
أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 11. كَلْبُكَمْ أَسْوَدُ وَكَلْبُهُنْ أَبْيَضُ  
أَخْوَهَا ضَرْبَ تُورِي 13. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ فِنجَانِي? —  
أَخْوَكَ كَشَّبَ وَفَخْنُ مَا كَتَبَنَا 2. نَحْنُ نَكْتَبُ

- ### Twentieth Lesson
1. Who will write and who will draw? — My mother will write  
and my sister will draw 2. They (m.) have written and you (m.)  
did not write, 3. They (m.) will write (write) and you (f.) will not  
write (do not write). 4. They (f.) have drunk and you (f.) did not  
drink 5. They (f.) will drink (drink) and you (f.) will (do) not  
drink 6. My cow drinks now and thy (m.) cow does not drink  
7. Where does Fatima write? — She writes in my copy-book  
8. Salih has now written and I did not write 9. Where didst  
thou (m.) leave my ox? — I left it in my garden 10. Shakir  
left my book in my school 11. Who has opened my book?  
— My pupil has opened it 12. I have a table and a chair and  
thou (m.) hast a table and a bench 13. Thy (m.) table is  
bigger than my table 14. Where is my brother Ahmad? —  
He is in my school 15. My sister Fatima is bigger than I and  
I am bigger than thee (f.) 18. Who opened my book? —  
I did not open it. Thy (m.) pupil Shakir opened it 19. She  
will go (goes) out and thou (f.) will not (dost not) go out  
20. Thou (m.) wilt draw and he will not draw 21. Ibrahim  
writes and Fatima does not write 22. You (m.) went out of  
my garden and they (m.) do (will) not go out of it.
- أَخْوَكَ كَشَّبَ وَفَخْنُ مَا كَتَبَنَا 2. نَحْنُ نَكْتَبُ
1. وَانْسِمْ لَا تَكْتَبُونَ 3. مَائِدَاتِكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مَائِدِي  
4. لِي كَرْسِيٌّ وَبَنْكٌ وَلَهَا مَائِدَةٌ وَكَرْسِيٌّ 5. أَيْنَ  
كَشَّبَ سَلَيْمٌ? — هُوَ كَشَّبَ فِي كَرْسِيٍّ 6. يَوْرَهُ  
أَسْوَدُ وَأَوْرَهَا أَبْيَضُ 7. تَلْمِيذُكَمْ كَسَرَ كَرْسِيٌّ  
أَسْوَدَ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ حَصَانِي 9. أَيْنَ أَخْوَهَا  
أَخْوَانُكَ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ حَصَانِي 9. أَيْنَ أَخْوَهَا  
8. حَصَانُكَ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ حَصَانِي 9. أَيْنَ أَخْوَهَا  
— هُوَ فِي مَدَرَسَيٍّ 10. هُمْ يَكْتَبُونَ وَهُوَ لَا يَكْتَبُ  
11. أَخْدَنَا شَرَبَتْ وَأَخْدَنَكَ ما شَرَبَتْ 12. أَيْنَ حَرْفَهُ?  
هو وَجَدَهُ فِي كَرْمِي 14. (نَحْنُ) وَجَدَنَاها. (هي)
- وَجَدَهُهُ (أَنَا) وَجَدَهُنَا. (أَنْتَ) وَجَدَنَتِي.

14. بِيْتَكُنْ أَفْرَبْ مِنْ بَيْتِي 15. لَذَا لَوْرْ وَهَجَارْ وَلَهْ  
بَهْلَ وَبَهْرَةْ 16. لَهَا أَخْتَ وَلِيْ أَخْتَ وَانْجَ.

## Twenty-second Lesson

1. Where art thou (m.) going, my brother?— I am going (I go, or I shall go) to my school 2. Where is thy (m.) book?— My book is on my table 3. My sister went out of my room and my brother did not go out from there 4. My brother returned from Jaffa and my father will return to-morrow from there 5. My teacher went with my grand-father to my school 6. Who went out with thee (m.) from my room?— Thy (m.) teacher went out with me from there 7. I have a big dog and thou hast a small dog. Thy (m.) dog is smaller than my dog 8. My brother is smaller than I and I am smaller than thou (m) 9. My neighbour is very poor and thy (m.) neighbour is very rich 10. Thy (m.) camel is smaller than my camel and thy (m.) ass is bigger than my ass 11. Ahmad is very poor and Salim is poorer than he 12. Ibrahim is very rich and Shakir is richer than he.

1. أَيْنَ جَرِيدَيْ?— جَرِيدَيْ تَلَكَ عَلَى مَائِدَيْتِي 2. حِصَانِي  
أَصْعُرْ مِنْ حِصَانِي 3. يُورِهَا كَشِيرْ حَدَّا 4. إِبْرِهِيمْ  
أَغْنِي مِنْ جَارِي وَجَارِهِ غَنِي وَجَارِنَا قَفِيرْ 5. يَا سَلِيمْ  
أَيْضًا كَلَّ هَنَاءَ وَهَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَكْبَرْ مِنْ  
وَذَلِيلَ الْجَمَلِ قَفِيرْ 6. الْحَلَاقُ كَلَّ فِي يَالَافَا وَالْحَسَادَادِ  
كَبِيرْ وَذَلِيلَ الْجَمَلِ ضَغِيرْ 7. هَذَا الْجَمَلُ عَنِي  
كِتابِكِي الْجَمَلُ كِتابِي 8. أَيْضًا الْجَمَلُ كِتابِي

1. This camel is small. It is smaller than my camel 2. This ass is cheap and that ass is cheaper than it 3. That tailor is poor. He is poorer than my neighbour 4. Who was in my room to-day? — Zayd was there and the baker too was there 5. The barber was in Jaffa to-day and the blacksmith also was there 6. Thy (m.) sister was in my garden and Fatima also was there 7. My mother was in Jaffa to-day and my sister on my table in my room 8. When did Zayd return from Jaffa and when did the barber return? — Zayd returned from Jaffa to-day and the barber also returned to-day 10. What is this? — This is a dog 11. This dog is bigger and fatter than my dog 12. This new house is larger than my house and that house is smaller than it 13. This elephant is big and that elephant is bigger than it 14. When didst thou (m.) return from Jaffa? — I returned from there to-day 15. Thy (m.) grand-father was in my vineyard and in my garden to-day 16. Where is the big dog and where is the ass? — The big dog is in my garden and the ass also is in my garden.

## Twenty-fourth Lesson

1. This camel is small. It is smaller than my camel 2. This ass is cheap and that ass is cheaper than it 3. That tailor is poor. He is poorer than my neighbour 4. Who was in my room to-day? — Zayd was there and the baker too was there 5. The barber was in Jaffa to-day and the blacksmith also was there 6. Thy (m.) sister was in my garden and Fatima also was there 7. My mother was in Jaffa to-day and my sister on my table in my room 8. When did Zayd return from Jaffa and when did the barber return? — Zayd returned from Jaffa to-day and the barber also returned to-day 10. What is this? — This is a dog 11. This dog is bigger and fatter than my dog 12. This new house is larger than my house and that house is smaller than it 13. This elephant is big and that elephant is bigger than it 14. When didst thou (m.) return from Jaffa? — I returned from there to-day 15. Thy (m.) grand-father was in my vineyard and in my garden to-day 16. Where is the big dog and where is the ass? — The big dog is in my garden and the ass also is in my garden.

كبير. ذلك المِسْتَانُ . ذلك المِسْتَانُ كثيرون .

وأكملت بنينا ونحنا وهي شربت حليباً . 7. هذا الجملُ أكبرُ وأسمهُ من ذلك الجملُ 8. الحلاق أفقسُ مِنْ الحدَادِ 9. المعلمُ في عرفةِ المدير

## Twenty-sixth Lesson

- Who opened the big door ? — I opened it 2. What hast thou (m.) eaten to-day ? — I have eaten bread and meat to-day 3. The dog of the neighbour is fatter than the dog of the barber 4. Where is the book of the director of the school ? — His book is on the table in the room of the grand-father 5. The grandfather of the neighbour was in the vineyard of my brother to-day 6. The neighbour of the tailor is poor. He is poorer than the neighbour of the blacksmith 7. Who visited thee (m.) in the school to-day ? — The teacher of Muhammad visited me there 8. What is thy (m.) name and what is the name of thy (m.) sister ? — My name is Ismail and the name of my sister is Fatima 9. Thy (m.) sister visited the sister of the teacher to-day 10. Where is the son of the blacksmith ? — His son is in the house of the baker 11. Where is the dog of the uncle (on the mother's side) ? — The dog of the uncle is under the table 12. The house of the aunt (on the mother's side) and her vineyard new house today 13. My uncle (on the father's side) has visited thy (m.) uncle in the vineyard of my grandmother to-day 14. My aunt (on the father's side) was in the new house today 15. The big son of the teacher was in Jaffa to-day 16. Who drank the milk ? — I did not drink it. My brother Ibrahim drank it 17. My uncle (on the mother's side) visited the uncle of the neighbour in Jaffa 18. What is the name of the uncle (on the mother's side) ? — The name of the uncle is Ismail 19. The name of my brother is Ibrahim and the name of my sister is Hind 20. This new house is larger than my house.

1. هُوَ أَكْبَرُ فِي الْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ 11. هُذَا الْفَيلُ كَبِيرٌ 10. الْجَدَادُ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْجَدِيدَ 12. أَنْ أَخْتَاطُ هُوَ فِي بَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ 13. أَنْ أَكْتَابُ الْجَدِيدِ 14. الْعَلِيمُ فِي عَرْفَةِ الْمَدِيرِ
6. أَكْلَتْ بَنِيَا وَنَحْنَا وَهِيَ شَرِبَتْ حَلِيبَاً . 7. هَذَا الْجَمَلُ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَهُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الْجَمَلِ 8. الْحَلَاقُ يَفْقَسُ مِنْ الْحَدَادِ 9. الْمَعْلُومُ فِي عَرْفَةِ الْمَدِيرِ
- ## Twenty-seventh Lesson
- The hare is a small animal in the park of the animals (zoo) to-day and my father will be there to-morrow 3. What has thy (m.) brother seen in the zoo ? — My brother has seen there a big lion in a big cage 4. Hast thou (m.) written to-day ? — Yes, I have written to-day 5. Hast thou (m.) opened the gate of the vineyard ? — No, I have not opened it. 6. Will thy (m.) brother be at school to-morrow ? — Yes, he will be there to-morrow 7. What didst thou (m.) ask the baker and what did he answer ? — I asked him when he was in the house of the uncle (on the mother's side) and he answered that he was there to-day 8. I have a friend and his name is Salim 9. My father rode in a boat on sea and thy (m.) father will ride in a boat to-morrow 10. My brother rode an ass and thy (m.) brother rode a horse 11. The mariner died in the house of my friend 12. Who saw the brother of the mariner ? — The father of my friend saw the brother of the mariner 13. My grand-father visited the father of the teacher in Jaffa 14. The name of the father of the teacher is Tawfiq and the name of the brother of the director is Zayed.
  - فَتَحَتَّ بَابَ الْغَرْفَةِ 3. أَنْ صَدِيقِي 2. صَدِيقِي فِي أَخْوَ الْمَدِيرِ .

كانت في السوق صباحاً وابن المصمود الصغير  
عمره الجديدة. وابوهم كان أيام في المدرسة وابوها  
ركب حماراً وأخوه ركب حصاناً وحالياً زارها  
و هذى المعلم اسم من ذلك الشعب 8. هنا  
اللهم 7. من رأى أباً أحيطاط؟ — أخوه الحمداد  
رأى أباً أحيطاط 8. الأسد الكبير في قصص كبار  
اللهم 9. هل كتب اليوم؟ — نعم هو كتب 10. افتح  
باب المعرفة؟ — نعم هو فتحه

## Twenty-ninth Lesson

1. This copy-book is big and that copy-book is small
2. This fox is bigger than my fox 3. Who opened the small window? — I opened the small window 4. Where dost thou (m.) go, my uncle? — I go to the new shop 5. My sister was in the new market 6. I went to the market in the morning and returned from there in the evening 7. The father of Salim was at school in the forenoon 8. What hast thou (m.) drunk in the forenoon and what hast thou (m.) drunk in the after-noon? — In the forenoon I drank a cup of milk and in the after-noon I drank a cup of coffee 9. This pupil is bigger than the pupil of my brother 10. Where is the fat ox? — The fat ox is in the garden of the carpenter 11. Shakir saw a pretty bird on the tree 12. My brother drank a cup of coffee and my uncle (on the father's side) drank milk 13. Where is the bird of Muhammad? — His bird is in a small cage 14. I have a fox and a hare and thou (m.) hast a dog and a lamb 15. Where is the little bird? — The little bird is on the tree 16. Where is the new chair? — The new chair is under the tree.

يستان أخبار 12. هذى التجار أفتر من ذلك التجار  
هو في عرقه الجديد 10. ابن تلميذكم 9. هنا  
أحيطاط في السوق 11. ابن التجار في  
المدرسة صباحاً وأختي كانت هناك بعد الظهر  
كان في المدرسة صباحاً وأختي كانت هناك بعد الظهر

1. When did thy (m.) brother mount the mount and when did he descend from it? — My brother mounted the mount in the forenoon 2. What did thy (m.) brother eat and what did thy (m.) sister eat? — My brother ate bread and a piece of meat and my sister ate bread and a piece of cheese 3. Where is the (she-)cat of my aunt (on the mother's side)? — It is in the little room 4. My grand-mother has a (she-)cat and an ape. The ape is bigger than the (she-)cat. 5. This hand is clean and that hand is dirty 6. This foot is clean and that foot is dirty 7. Who has taken the newspaper of the teacher? — I do not know who has taken it 8. Dost thou (m.) know the brother of Salim? — No, I do not know him 9. Who raised this newspaper from the earth? — I raised it 10. My brother found a nut on the earth and raised it 11. Salim raised this nut from the earth 12. Where is the newspaper of my brother? — Ibrahim took it and put it on the big table 13. Where is my little brother? — He is in the forest 14. Thy (m.) brother plays with my brother in the forest 15. Ahmad played with my brother in the forest.

## Thirty-first Lesson

٤- هذه المدرسة صغيرة ويلات المدرسة كبيرة

٤٠. أين هرّة الأخت؟ — هرّة ما في تلّك المزرعة؟ و هندر

وَهُلْ يَعْرِفُ كَبِيرَةً وَتَلَكَ الْأَغْرِيَقَةَ صَبِيرَةً

لَا هُوَ إِلَّا مُدْبِرٌ وَهُوَ أَنْوَاعُ الْمُكْرَسَةِ ؟

وَمِنْهُ فِي أَنْتِي هُوَ  
وَمِنْهُ إِلَّا حِلْمٌ وَنَظْفَةٌ  
وَمِنْهُ بَلَى

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

卷之三

وَلَمْ يَرْجِعْ إِلَيْهِ أَنْ يَأْتِيَهُ إِلَيْهِ وَلَمْ يَرْجِعْ إِلَيْهِ أَنْ يَأْتِيَهُ إِلَيْهِ

**الخطب** | تذكر من هدا الخطاب في ذلك الامر

وَهُدْهُدُ الْبَرَّهُ صَعْدَهُ 10. مِنْ كُلِّ هَذِهِ  
رَسِيْرِهُ وَهُدْهُدُهُ وَهُدْهُدُهُ وَهُدْهُدُهُ

### Thirty-third Lesson

1. I have two big oxen and thou (m.) hast two big cows  
2. The two dogs of my brother are big and the two dogs of my  
grand-father are small. 3. Thy (m.) two cows are small and  
his two cows are big. 4. My brother divided the piece of the  
cheese in two parts. He ate the one (in Arabic: the first) part and  
my sister ate the other part. 5. I bought two cows to-day, one  
cow before noon and one cow in the after-noon. The one (first)  
cow is small and the other is big. 6. This tailor is old. He is  
older than that tailor. 7. These two dogs are small and those  
two cows are big. 8. The bread which thou (m.) hast bought  
in the new market is cheaper than the bread which I have  
bought in the shop. 9. Who has split the nut which was on  
**the table** in my room and who has eaten its core? — Salim

split it and ate its core 10. These two vineyards are bigger than the two vineyards of my brother 11. These two news-

13. We have  
two asses are smaller than thy (m.) two asses  
papers are bigger than the two newspapers of Layd  
two vineyards and You (m.) have two houses.

## Thirty-fourth Lesson

1. Iobanum divided the piece of the meat into two parts.  
Then he put each of the two parts in a scale of the balance.  
2. The balance of my brother is bigger than the balance of thy

(m.) grandfather 3. What hast thou (m.) done with the sugar  
which I have bought in the new market?—I first divided it into  
two parts, then I put each of the two parts on the table in my

two bulls when I put each of the two bulls on the scale in my room

4. My brother has two oxen and I have two fat cows

5. Thy (m.) father said to thy (m.) brother: draw for me

two automobiles and thy (m.) brother drew them two automobiles less  
6. My brother and my sister went to school in the forenoon  
and returned from there in the afternoon. 7. Where is my sister

and, continued from previous page. 7. Who is my mother  
and thy (m.) sister? — They (dual) went to school. 8. From  
where did I and my brother return? — You (dual) have returned.

9. This book is cheap, and that book is a little cheaper than it. 10. I drank a little from the milk and ate a little from the bread, and my brother ate and drank

more than 11. The two new houses of my brother are much larger than the two houses of Salim. 12. The two sisters of Salim have much written and read to-day. 13. I have no

14. My brother has not gone to school to-day because he is ill.  
15. What hast thou (m.) eaten in the forenoon? — I ate bread.

and a piece of meat.

لِيَنْتَهِيَ الْكَوْنُ كَمَا أَنْتَ تَنْهَى

بِشَانْ أَيْضًا بِشَانْ وَلَا يُنْهَى  
بِشَانْ وَلَا يُنْهَى بِشَانْ

وَيَقْرَأُهُ مِنْ أَسْمَنٍ إِذَا هُنْ يَكْتُبُونَ

أين جريدة المسير ؟ — هما على  
الخطير الخطاطي في

الْأَمْلَائِيَّةِ فِي عِرْفَةِ الْمَلَبِّ وَبَيْتِ الْأَخْبَارِ وَبَسْطَاهُ

7. يَوْمًا أَكْبَرٌ مِنْ يُورِيهِ 8. كُلَّا أَخْيَاطٍ وَأَزْيَاءٍ  
 9. حَمَارًا خَاتَمِي وَهَلَّاهَا 10. لَهُ جَمَارٌ وَاحِدٌ وَتُورَانٌ  
 وَلَنَا حِمَازَانٌ وَثُورٌ وَاحِدٌ
- Thirty-sixth Lesson**
1. أَخْيَيْ وَقَفَ بَيْنَ الْجَنَدِ وَالْأَخْتِ 2. مَا سَمِعَ  
 فِي عِرْفَةِ الْمُدْبِرِ 3. هُوَ سَمِعَ هُنَاكَ أَنَّكَ مَرِيضٌ  
 3. أَخْتِي أَخْذَتِ الْلَّحْمَ وَقَسْمَهُ إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ 4. أَيْنَ  
 الْكِتَابُ الْجَدِيدُ الَّذِي أَشَّرَّرَتِهِ فِي الْمَكَانِ  
 الْجَدِيدِ 5. أَجْنَاكَ وَصَعْتَهُ عَلَى الْمَسَائِدَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ  
 وَيَقْرَأُوكَ أَسْمَنِ مِنْ بَقْرِيْ جَدِيدِي 6. بَيْتَاهُ أَفْرَبُ  
 مِنْ بَيْسِيلَى 7. لِي كَتَبَانِ جَدِيدَانِ وَلَهُ أَيْضًا كَتَبَانِ  
 جَدِيدَانِ 8. أَيْنَ الْمَهَارَانِ 9. هُمَا فِي الْبَسْتَانِ وَأَيْنَ  
 بَيْتَاهَا أَخْيَاطِ الْجَدِيدَانِ 10. هُمَا فِي الْمَشْوِقِ الْجَدِيدِ  
 لَنَا تُورَانٌ وَهَا أَيْضًا تُورَانٌ 11. حِمَارَيِي أَكْبَرٌ  
 مِنْ حِمَارِيِي أَخْيَيِي 12. مَتِي زَارَ مَعْلُوكَ خَاتَانَا 13.  
 أَمَامَ الْجَسَامِ 14. هَذَا الشَّارِعُ أَطْوَلُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ  
 الشَّارِعِ 15. أَخْيَاطَ بَازَوْنَ كَبُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي بُسْتَانِ الْجَدِيدِ  
 16. مَنْ رَأَى أَخْيَاطِينِ الْيَوْمَ 17. أَنَا رَأَيْتُ أَخْيَاطِينِ  
 زَارَهُ بَعْدَ الظَّاهِرِ 18. جَدِيدَتِهِ زَارَتِ الْيَوْمَ أَمَّ الْمُعَلِّمِ  
 بَعْدَ الظَّاهِرِ 19. مَعْلُومَا هَذِهِ الْمَسْرِسَةِ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ

## Thirty-eighth Lesson

1. أَبْنَيْ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدَرِسَةِ الرَّتِيْ فِي شَارِعِ  
 يَافَا 2. عَمَّنَا كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْقَدِيسِ وَمَعْلِمِي أَيْضًا  
 كَانَ هَنَالَكَ 3. أَيْنَ أَخْتِي الصَّغِيرَةِ الْأَنَّ 4. هِيَ تَلْعَبُ  
 أَمَامَ الْجَسَامِ 5. هَذَا الشَّارِعُ أَطْوَلُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ  
 الشَّارِعِ 6. أَخْيَاطَ بَازَوْنَ كَبُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي بُسْتَانِ الْجَدِيدِ  
 7. مَعْلُومَا هَذِهِ الْمَسْرِسَةِ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ
- 2. The Moslems do not drink wine and do not eat pork**  
 the teachers of my school and the lady-teachers of my school (in Arabic  
 noon the mosque which is in the quarter of the blacksmiths  
 3. Where did thy (m.) brother learn the Arabic language? — My  
 brother learned the Arabic language in the school which is in  
 the Jaffa street 4. Hast thou (m.) learned the English language  
 at school? — Yes I have learned it there 5. What are the four  
 directions? — The four directions are: East, West, North and South  
 6. What hast thou (m.) learned at school to-day? — I have learned  
 the four directions to-day 7. Thy teachers have visited the  
 teachers of my brother in the school 8. Where is the little  
 brother of the neighbour? — He is now playing in front of the  
 garden and is shouting in a loud voice 9. Who shouted in  
 front of the house in the forenoon? — The little brother  
 of the neighbour played and shouted in front of the house  
 10. These teachers have been to-day in the forest and those  
 teachers have been to-day in Jaffa 11. My brother learned the  
 Arabic and the English languages at school 12. Where is thy (m.)  
 dog now? — it is now in the room of grand-mother 13. The  
 teachers and the lady-teachers have been in Jerusalem to-day  
 14. Where are the lady-teachers of this school? — They (f.) are  
 in the vineyard of my grand-mother.

كِرْمَ أَخْبِي 8. نَكَلَتْ الْمُهَرَّةُ الْأَنْكَلِبَرِيَّةُ فِي  
هَذِهِ الْمَسْرِسَةِ 9. أَيْنَ تَعْلَمُ أَبْنَائِ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟  
هُوَ تَعْلَمُ الْمُهَرَّةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي يَافَا 10. مُدِيرُ هَذِهِ  
الْمَسْرِسَةِ وَمُعْلِمُهَا رَجَعُوا إِلَيْهَا يَوْمَ مِنْ الصَّدِّسِ

### Lesson 42

- Where are the newspapers which I have bought in the forenoon? — They are on my table.
- Where hast thou (m.) bought these new copy-books? — I have bought them in the new shop.
- Take this chalk and draw a man on the blackboard.
- The blackboard is black and the chalk is white.
- One ship of the ships which I saw in the morning has sunk in the afternoon.
- The bear is bigger than the wolf and the elephant is bigger than the bear.
- I have seen to-day the pupils of this school in the forest which is near Jaffa.
- When didst thou (m.) buy these books? — I bought them last year.
- For how much (money) did the farmer sell the fox and for how much (money) did he buy the ass?
- The farmer sold the fox for one Palestinian pound and bought the ass for two Palestinian pounds.
- This merchant and his partner opened a new shop in the new market.
- The partners of this company are richer than the partners of that company.
- These hares are bigger than those hares.
- The houses in this street are bigger than the houses (that are) in that street.
- I have seen to-day the pupils of this school in the large forest which is near Haifa.

### Lesson 43

- The farmer have sown to-day turnip in the garden.
- The landlord has been to-day in the village and has bought there for one Palestinian pound straw from the farmers.
- These pupils are diligent and those (pupils) are lazy.
- These schools are larger than those (schools).
- Where didst thou (m.) leave the dogs of my grandfather?
- I left them in the vineyard.
- These houses are larger than the houses in that street.
- When hast thou (m.) bought these cocks?
- I bought them yesterday.
- What has Ibrahim drawn in the new copy-book?
- This line is longer than all the other lines.
- The sons of the neighbour are lazy and his daughters are diligent.
- The daughters of my brother have learned in this school and his sons have learned in the school which is in the old city.
- The farmers who went out from the mosque went to Jaffo.

13. From where did the pupils who have now entered the school return? — They returned from the forest.

14. What has the director of the school given to the pupils? — He has given them new book.

15. These copybooks are dear. They are dearer than those copybooks.

16. The sugar which I have bought in this shop is dearer than the sugar which I have bought in the market.

وَهُوَ الْفَلَاجُونَ أَغْنِي مِنْ أَلَاءِ الْقَلَاحِينَ  
وَهُوَ الْفَلَاجُونَ أَغْنِي مِنْ أَلَاءِ الْقَلَاحِينَ

- Aين أشتريتم هذهِ الْأَنْكَشْتَبِ الْجَنْدِيَّةَ؟ — أنا  
أشترتها في المَدْكَانِ الْجَنْدِيَّهِ 3. هُوَ الْأَمْوَالُ الْمُسْلَمِيَّهُ  
الْكَسْلَابُونَ وَالْأَلَاءِ الْتَّلَامِيزُ الْمُحَمَّدُونَ 4. صَاحِبُ  
هَذِهِ الْبَيْوَتِ عَنِي . هُوَ أَغْنِي مِنْ صَاحِبِ تِلَكَ  
الْبَيْوَتِ 5. أَيْنِ كَلَابُ الْجَنْدِيَّهُ؟ — هِيَ فِي بَيْتَانِ الْجَنْدِيَّهِ  
6. تَلَامِيزُ هَذِهِ الْمَسْرِسَهُ كَبُوا إِلَيْوْمَ فِي النَّابَهَهِ  
وَتَلَامِيزُ تِلَكَ الْمَسْرِسَهُ كَلُوا هَنَاكَ الْبَارِحَهِ  
7. الْبَيْتُ الْجَنْدِيَّهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ الْبَيْتِ الْمَسْرِسَهِ  
8. أَنْجِي كَاعِ بِيَتِهِ الْقَدِيمَ وَأَشْتَرِي بَيْتًا جَدِيدًا  
وَرَأَيْتُ الْبَارِحَ دِبَّا كَبِيرًا فِي قَصْصٍ 10. الْمَدَارِسُ فِي هَذِهِ  
الْمُتَهَبَّهِ صَغِيرَهُ . هِيَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ الْمَدَارِسُ فِي يَمَّالِكِ الْقَرْبَاهِ  
هَذِهِ الْمَدَارِسُ أَرْخَصُ مِنْ تِلَكَ الدَّفَانِزِ 12. هَذِهِ الْمَيْوَتُ  
الْجَنْدِيَّهُ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ تِلَكَ الْبَيْوَتِ الْقَدِيدَهِ 13. هُوَ لَاءُ  
الْأَنْجَازَونَ أَغْنِيَهُ 14. هُوَ أَغْنِي مِنْ أَلَاءِ الْأَنْجَازَينَ .

**Lesson 46**

1. What is there on the table? — On the table there are books, copy-books and newspapers  
 2. We have drunk coffee in big cups and they (m.) have drunk coffee in small cups  
 3. What didst thou (m.) buy in the new shop? — I bought there newspapers, copy books and books

4. A thief entered the room of my big brother and stole the clock which my brother bought yesterday.  
 5. I have written to-day with blue ink and my sister has written with red ink  
 6. My brother was in the magistrate's court (in Arabic, court of peace) and there saw the advocate who was yesterday in the vineyard of my grand-father.

7. Who has seen my new house? — My mother saw it yesterday.  
 8. Thy father said that he waited for thee (m.) in the magistrate's court

9. The tailor waited for thee (m.) in the forenoon in his shop which is in the Moslem quarter.  
 10. Where is the cheese which I have bought in the market? — It is in the kitchen.  
 11. I have bought to-day in the market apples, grapes and nuts.  
 12. This apple is sour and that apple is sweet.  
 13. This nut is bigger than that nut.

1. هذه الساعة أكبير من الساعة التي أشتراها

أخوك في القدس 2. أين أجيبيه التي وضعتها على الملكة? — هي على الملكة في المائدة

3. هذا الشفاح حامض. هو أحمس من ذلك المقام.

4. من رأى اليوم مديراً لهذه المدرسة? — أنا زايد

اليوم 5. هذا البيت الجيد أصغر من بيته

العم 6. ما أنتي أخوك في الدكان

الجدار 7. هو أنتي هناك كنباً ودافئاً

البيوت في هذه القرية أكبر من بيروت تلوك القرية

8. لي كلب أبيض وكلب أسود. الكلب الأبيض

أشمن من الكلب مؤخر 9. من رأى أجدد اليوم؟ — أوي راته في السوق الجيد 10. يبرهيم أكبر من أحمد وأحمد أكبر من سليمان 11. أبي

كان السابح في حفل إبراهيم

**Lesson 49**

1. The father of my father and the father of my mother are my grand-fathers (dual)

The mother of my father and the mother of my mother are my grand-mothers (dual) and I am their (m.) grand-son

2. What has thy (m.) grand-father planted in your (m.) garden to-day?

3. Salim and his father went out from the magistrate's court and returned to their (dual) house which is in the old city

4. Salima and her mother have been in the mosque to-day. My father and my mother are my parents (dual) and I am their (dual) son. My parents (dual) have other sons and daughters. Their (dual) sons are my brothers and their (dual) daughters are my sisters

5. My brother has been once in Jerusalem and twice in Haifa

6. My sister has been to-day in the zoo and there saw various vultures.

7. What is the thing that the old man has carried from the forest? — The old man has carried a bundle of fire-wood from there

8. Where are the new books which thou (m.) didst buy yesterday? — My big (elder) brother took them

9. My teachers and thine (m.) have been to-day in the Moslem quarter.

10. My teachers and daughters of our neighbour and his sons have been to-day in the forest which is near our village

11. Where are thy (m.) two new books and where are my two copy-books?

12. My two new books are in my room and thy (m.) two copy-books also are there.

**Lesson 50**

1. How many times has thy (m.) big (elder) brother been in Jaffa to-day? — My big brother

has been there twice to-day

2. This hunter has hunted two hares to-day and slaughtered one of them (dual) and sold its meat in the market

3. This hunter always hunts in the forest which is near your (m.) village

4. Why does the child weep and (why do) the tears run from his eyes (dual)? — He weeps because of the glacial (in Arabic, of the strength of) cold.

5. Thy (m.) pupil came to me and after he saluted me said that thou (m.)

didst wait for me in thy (m.) new house

6. The teacher of Zayd passed by my father and saluted him

7. Thy (m.) uncle

(on the father's side) has visited me yesterday and I shall visit him to-morrow, God willing ! 8. When will thy (m.) uncle (on the mother's side) visit me ? — He will visit thee (m.) in the afternoon, God willing ! 9. Thy (m.) teachers have visited my teachers in the school to-day 10. Thy (m.) new houses are larger than their (m.) new houses 11. Who saw my two new houses ? — I saw them (dual) 12. The two dogs of my brother are bigger than thy (m.) two dogs.

1. كِتَابَةُ الْجَدِيدَيْدَانِ فِي عَرْفَةِ الصَّفَيْرَةِ 2. أَيْنَ كَلْبَانَا—هُمَا فِي عَرْفَةِ جَبَدَنَا 3. كَمْ كَتَبَاهُ أَشْتَرِي أَبُوكَ الْبَارِحَ فِي الْكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ؟—أَيْنَ أَشْتَرِي الْبَارِحَ كَتَابَاهُ 4. كَمْ أَرْبَابَ صَادَ الْصَّيَادُ الْبَارِحَ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَالِيَةِ؟—هُوَ صَادُ الْبَارِحَ أَرْبَابَ وَأَخْوَهُ زَارِفِي الْبَارِحَ وَأَنَا سَازُورُهُ بَعْدَ الظَّاهِرِ 6. أَيْنَ دَفَقَرَاهِي؟—أَحْوَلَ وَأَنْدَهَا 7. مَنْ رَأَى الْيَوْمِ حَمَارِيْ جَدِيدِي؟—أَحْوَ حَمَارَنَا رَاهِهَا 8. مُعْلِمُوا الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ زَارُوا الْيَوْمَ مُعَلِّمَنَا 9. هَتَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ اسْمَنُ مِنْ بَقَرِيْنَا مُجْتَهِدٌ 10. لِي حِبْرُ أَجَهُرُ وَلَهَا حِبْرُ أَزْرِقُ 7. أَيْنَ أَشْتَرِي صَدِيقَ الْحَيْرِ الْأَجَهِرِ؟ — هُوَ أَشْتَرِي الْحَيْرِ الْأَجَهِرِ فِي الْكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ 8. الْدَّرَوسُ الْيَوْمَ صَعْبَةٌ وَهَذِهِ الْدَّرَوسُ أَسْهَلُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْدَّرَوسِ 10. مَنْ أَشْتَرِي أَخْوَلَ بَعْدَ الظَّاهِرِ؟ — هُوَ أَشْتَرِي دَفَرِينَ 11. كَمْ دَفَرَاهِي قَسَّخَ هَذَا الْشَّبَاكَ الْكَبِيرِ؟ — تَسْمِيدُ أَخْيَ قَسَّخَ 12. أَخْنَانَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ أَخْتَكُمْ وَأَخْتَكُمْ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ أَخْتَهُ

**Lesson 53** 1. My cow is bigger than thy (m.) cow, It is the biggest cow in this village. 2. I have two red cows and thou (m.) hast two black cows 3. My neighbour has slaughtered to-day two lambs and distributed the meat gratis among the poor of this quarter 4. Our neighbour opened a fish-shop in the market which is in the old city 5. These children are dumb and those (children) are deaf. 6. Our neighbour has a big and fat ox. It is the biggest and fattest (ox) in our village. 7. My brother Ibrahim learns in the new school. He is the smallest pupil in it 8. My big brother has two big automobiles. He bought them (dual) last year in Jerusalem 9. The lessons in this book are easy and the lessons in that book are difficult 10. These lessons are easier than those (lessons) 11. This chair is heavy and that chair is light 12. This chair is heavier than that (chair). 13. That chair is lighter than this (chair) 14. I have a new house and my brother has a new house. The house of my brother is newer than my house 15. The two dumb sisters of our neighbour have visited to-day my big sister.

القريةِ الْيَسْنَاءِ فِي بُسْتَانِ جَدِّكَ 12. هَذِهِ الْمَأْيَدَةُ  
تَهْبِيلَةٌ وَتِلْكَ الْمَأْيَدَةُ خَفِيفَةٌ 13. تِلْكَ الْمَأْيَدَةُ أَخْفَى مِنْ

هَذِهِ الْمَأْيَدَةِ 14. هَذِهِ الْمَأْيَدَةُ أَعْقَلُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْمَأْيَدَةِ

5. Ahmad, read what I have written on the blackboard  
 6. The teacher said to his pupil: Ibrahim, read what  
 Zayd has written on the blackboard 7. In this evening  
 school there are 56 pupils 8. The wife of our neigh-  
 bour does not know (the) reading nor (the) writing.  
 She is illiterate 9. The husband of this woman  
 learns the Arabic language in one of the evening  
 schools 10. My father has 12 cows and 5 camels.

Lesson 56 1. My elder brother has two big cars  
 one of them (dual) is a passenger-car  
 and the other is a transport-car 2. In the week there  
 are 7 days and they are as follows: Sunday, Monday,  
 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday  
 3. In the day there are 24 hours; in the hour there are  
 60 minutes; in the  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour there are 30 minutes; in the  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  hour there are 15 minutes and in the  $\frac{1}{8}$  hour there  
 are 20 minutes. As to the minute it has 60 seconds 4. In  
 each Palestinian pound there are 100 piastres and in  
 each piastre 10 mils 5. For how much (money) hast  
 thou (m.) bought to-day apples and for how much  
 (money) hast thou (m.) bought grapes? — I have bought  
 to-day apples for 7 piastres and grapes for 13 piastres  
 6. For how much (money) didst thou (m.) buy these two  
 copy-books? I bought one of them (dual) for 6 mils and  
 the other (I bought) for 20 mils 7. How old art thou  
 (m.)? — I am 15 years old 8. I am 25 years old and  
 my elder brother is 33 years old 9. I have bought 4  
 new books to-day and my brother has bought 12 books  
 10. My little brother was in Jaffa twice, in Haifa 4  
 times and in Jerusalem 12 times.

**Page 136** 1. In this street there are 25 houses  
 and in that street there are 27 houses  
 2. Where hast thou (m.) learned the Arabic language?  
 — I have learned it in an evening school 3. In this  
 town there are 4 evening schools for teaching the  
 labourers reading and writing 4. Does this farmer  
 know the reading and the writing? — No, this farmer  
 does not know reading nor writing. He is illiterate.

11. في هذه القرية مدرستان مسائيتان  
 12. في هذه القرية مدرستان مسائيتان

**Lesson 58** 1. The 10<sup>th</sup> lesson in this book is easier  
 than the 16<sup>th</sup> lesson and the 53<sup>rd</sup> lesson  
 is more difficult than the 11<sup>th</sup> lesson 2. This peasant  
 ploughed his field to-day from 5 o'clock in the morning  
 until 11 o'clock 3. My brother ploughs his field twice  
 every day, once (in Arabic, the first time) from 6 o'clock

in the morning and once (in Arabic, and the other time) from 3 o'clock to 5 o'clock in the afternoon 4. A society was founded in this town to combat illiterateness 6. The peasant bought in this shop a sickle and his wife bought there a knife 7. This book is composed of three parts. In the first part there are 225 pages, in the second part there are 364 pages and in the third part there are 286 pages.